# LET'S STUDY URDU

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE

Includes

Audio DVD

ALI S. ASANI AND Syed Akbar Hyder LANGUAGE

# Let's Study Urdu An Introductory Course

Includes Audio DVD

#### Ali S. Asani and Syed Akbar Hyder

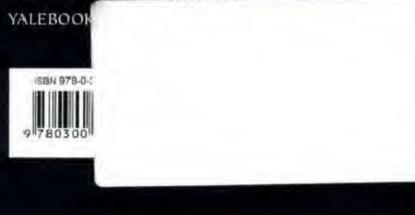
Let's Study Urdu: An Introductory Course is a comprehensive introduction to the Urdu language that draws on a range of real-life contexts, film songs, and popular Urdu poetry. It contains a variety of aural, oral, and written drills, which, used in combination with the accompanying audio materials, will help students master the language while keeping them entertained. Although intended primarily as a text for a first-year course in the language. Let's Study Urdu provides students of diverse backgrounds, including heritage speakers, the opportunity to enhance their competency in basic grammatical structures so that they can comfortably use the language in Urdu-speaking milieus in South Asia, the Middle East, Europe, and North America.

Ali S. Asani is Professor of the Practice of Indo-Muslim Languages and Cultures at Harvard University.

Syed Akbar Hyder is Associate Professor of Asian Studies and Islamic Studies at The University of Texas at Austin.

Cover photo: Michael Cumer

VALE UNIVERSITY PRESS



# LET'S STUDY URDU

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE AUDIO DVD ALI S. ASANI AND SYED AKBAR HYDER





The audio files on this disc are also available at yalebooks.com/urdu. ISBN 978-0-300-11400-3

© 2008 Vale University PO Box 209040 New Haven CT 06520-9040 yalebooks.com/languages All rights reserved

آیئے اردو پڑھیں

# Let's Study Urdu

# An Introductory Course

Ali S. Asani

Harvard University

and

Syed Akbar Hyder

University of Texas, Austin

**Yale University Press** 

New Haven and London

Copyright © 2008 by Yale University

All rights reserved

This book may not be reproduced, in whole or part, including illustrations, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Publisher: Mary Jane Peluso Development Editor: Brie Kluytenaar Manuscript Editor: Noreen O'Connor-Abel Production Editor: Ann-Marie Imbornoni Production Controller: Karen Stickler Marketing Manager: Timothy Shea

Cover Design: Mary Valencia Cover Photograph: Michael Currier

Printed in the United States of America.

ISBN 978-0-300-11400-3 (pbk.: alk.paper) Library of Congress Control Number: 2006939857

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

The paper in this book meets the guidelines for permanence and durability of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity of the Council on Library Resources.

10987654321

اپنے محبوب کی خاطر تھا خُدا کو منظور ورنہ قران بھی اترتا بہ زبانِ اردو اكبرالد آبادى

In Memoriam

Annemarie Schimmel

(1922-2003)

who, during her lifetime, worked tirelessly to bring about a better appreciation

of Urdu literature and its culture

## Contents

Introduction	xix
How to Use This Book: A Note for Teachers and Students	xxiv
Film Sources for Songs Cited in the Book	xxx
Chapter 1	
1.1 Word Order in the Urdu Sentence	11
1.2 Conjugation of Verb in and Pronouns	2
1.3 Greetings and <i>G</i> as Particle of Respect	7
1.4 Asking Questions	11
1.5 Urdu Postpositions and Definite and Indefinite Articles	14
1.6 Adjectives of Nationality	15
1.7 Introduction to Possessive Adjectives	17
1.8 Pronunciation Drill: Short and Long Vowels	19
(Conversation) گفتگو 1.9	20
1.10 Conversation Practice	21
چھلیا میرا نام :1.11 Song	21
1.12 Vocabulary	22
Chapter 2	
2.1 Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives	26
2.2 Cardinal Numbers 0-10	26

2.3	The Interrogative	27
2.4	The Postposition -	27
2.5	Pronunciation Drill - Aspirations	33
2.6	(Conversation) گفتگو	33
2.7	Conversation Practice	34
2.8	Songs: آواره جول	35
	آوارہ ہوں: میر اجو تا ہے جاپانی	35
2.9	Vocabulary	36
Cha	pter 3	
3.1	Nouns: Gender and Plural	38
3.2	Attributive and Predicate Adjectives	42
3.3	Marked and Unmarked Adjectives	43
3.4	Cardinal Numbers: 11-20	45
	Ordinal Numbers: 1-10	46
3.5	Pronunciation Drill: Perso-Arabic Sounds I	50
3.6	(Conversation) گفتگو	51
3.7	Conversation Practice	51
3.8	یہ ڈنیا گول ہے: Songs:	52
	یہ دُنیا گول ہے:Songs یہ دِل دیوانہ ہے	52
3.9	Vocabulary	53
Chap	oter 4	

4.1 Possessive Adjectives

56

-

4.2	Asking and Telling Age	62
4.3	Cardinal Numbers 21-30	64
4.4	Order in a Noun Phrase	65
4.5	Pronunciation Drills - Nasals	66
	Perso-Arabic Sounds II	67
4.6	(Conversation) گفتگو	68
4.7	Conversation Practice	68
4.8	میں بل دو بل کا شاعر ہوں .	69
	بہ تینا، یہ کاجل، یہ زلفیں، یہ آپچل	69
	بیہ نینا، بیہ کاجل، بیہ زلفیں، بیہ آچکل تحمر تیری سولہ	70
4,9	Vocabulary	70
Ch	apter 5	
5.1	The Present Habitual Tense	73
5.2	2. The Present Habitual Negative	75
5.3	Times of the Day, Days of the Week, and	
	Other Time Phrases	80
5.4	The Particle & with Temporal Words and Phrases	81
5.5	Review of Urdu Sentence Structure	82
5.6	The Verb Lig with Nouns and Verbs	85
5.7	7 Pronunciation Drill: Retroflexes	88
5.8	(Conversation) گفتگو	89
5.9	O Conversation Practice	90

دِل ہے کہ مانتا نہیں :5.10 Songs یاد تیری جب آتی ہے	90
یاد تیری جب آتی ہے	91
5.11 Vocabulary	91
Chapter 6	
6.1 Postpositions	96
6.2 The Oblique Case - Oblique Forms of Nouns	97
6.3 Oblique Forms of Demonstratives	100
6.4 Oblique Forms of Adjectives	101
6.5 Oblique Forms of Pronouns	102
6.6 Note on کا، کے، کی 6.6	103
6.7 The Interrogative Lets and its Oblique Forms	105
6.8 Note on $\stackrel{\sim}{\sim} \stackrel{\sim}{\sim}$	107
6.9 Pronunciation Drill: Aspirated, Perso-Arabic, and	
Retroflexive Sounds II	115
6.10 کفتگو (Conversation)	116
6.11 Conversation Practice	117
زندگ اِمتحان کیتی ہے۔ :6.12 Songs میرا دل بھی کتنا پاگل ہے	118
میرا دل بھی کتنا پاگل ہے	118
6.13 Vocabulary	119
Chapter 7	
مسكتا Expressing Potentials with	122
7.2 شبيس with Compound Verbs	122
×	

7.3 Further Uses of Jel		123
7.4 The Present Continuous Tense		124
7.5 The Comparative		125
7.6 The Superlative		127
7.7 Persian Adjectival Elements		128
7.8 Expressing More or Less		130
7.9 Cardinal Numbers 31-40		132
7.10 Aggregatives		132
7.11 The Future Tense		134
7.12 Pronunciation Drill: Diphthongs		140
7.13 Response Drill		140
7.14 (Conversation)		142
7.15 Conversation Practice		144
ابتھا تو ہم چلتے ہیں :7.16 Songs		145
		146
یاد آ رہی ہے شام ڈھل رہی ہے		146
7.17 Vocabulary		146
Chapter 8		
8.1 Formal Imperatives (with $\downarrow \tilde{l}$ )		150
8.2 Informal Imperatives (with 7)	44	151
8.3 Least Formal Imperatives (with )		152
8.4 Negative Imperatives		152

8.5 The Infinitive as Imperative	152
8.6 Use of فرانی and فرانی with Imperatives	153
8.7 Further Uses of Cyr	155
8.8 The Past Participles of 2 - 12	158
8.9 The Past Habitual Tense	160
8.10 The Past Continuous Tense	162
8.11 Cardinal Numbers 41-50	163
8.12 Pronunciation Drill: Doubling of Consonants	164
8.13 (Conversation) گفتگو	165
8.14 Conversation Practice	167
میری چان کچھ بھی کیجیئے : سانسوں کی ضرورت ہے جیسے آکھوں میں آکھوں میں	168
سانسوں کی ضرورت ہے جیسے	168
آتکھوں میں آتکھوں میں	168
3.16 Vocabulary	169
Chapter 9	
as a Temporal Marker	173
.2 S as a Direct Object Marker	174
.3 as an Indirect Object Marker	176
بيند in Verbal and Adjectival Constructions كو 4.	178
.5 $\int$ in Infinitive + $\leftarrow$ Construction	180
.6 Infinitive as the Subject	181
onstructions چاہتے in کو 7.	182
xii	

9.8 y with Abstract Possessions	
9.9 Special Object Forms	
9.10 Stem + SIL	
9.11 Noun-Verb Agreement in Urdu	
9.12 Cardinal Numbers 51-60	
9.13 Expressing Time with the Enclitic	
9.14 (Conversation) گفتگو 9.14	
9.15 Conversation Practice (1)	
9.15 Conversation Practice (2)	
تو چیز بڑی ہے ست ست 9.16 Songs:	
اد باغوں میں بہار ہے؟ (ہے) تم سے چلنے کی تمنّا ہے	
تم ے مِلْتے کی تمنّا ہے	
9.17 Vocabulary	
Chapter 10	
10.1 The Verb بانتا To Know"	
10.2 Asten Construction	
10.3 The Verb tT and Knowledge of Learned/Acquired Skills	
10.4 The Verb بي يحسّا , "To Ask"	
10.5 The Verb with and and with	
10.6 The Verb Vith - and Verb	
10.7 Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives	

10.9 Telling Time in Fractions	223
10.10 Cardinal Numbers 61-70	225
(Conversation) تَعْتَلُو 10.11	226
10.12 Conversation Practice	227
10.13 Songs: - 가지 유도	228
ایک پیار کا نغہ ہے	229
10.14 Vocabulary	229
Chapter 11	
11.1 The Interrogative کيسا	233
11.2 The Interrogative	234
11.3 Expressing "To Have"	235
11.4 The Possessive Adjective	240
11.5 The Reflexive Pronoun 33	242
11.6 Noun + الا	243
11.7 Adjective + الل	244
11.8 Postposition or Adverb + נוע	244
11.9 Oblique Infinitive + الا	246
11.10 Cardinal Numbers 71-80	248
(Conversation) گفتگو 11.11	249
11.12 Conversation Practice	250
	<ul> <li>10.10 Cardinal Numbers 61-70</li> <li>10.11 الشكل (Conversation)</li> <li>10.12 Conversation Practice</li> <li>10.13 Songs: ج لح كم كما ج المالية</li> <li>10.13 Songs: ج لح كمالية المالية</li> <li>10.14 Vocabulary</li> <li>10.14 Vocabulary</li> <li>11.1 The Interrogative لحمالية</li> <li>11.2 The Interrogative لحمالية</li> <li>11.3 Expressing "To Have"</li> <li>11.4 The Possessive Adjective لحيالية</li> <li>11.5 The Reflexive Pronoun محمولية</li> <li>11.6 Noun + للمالية</li> <li>11.7 Adjective + للمالية</li> <li>11.8 Postposition or Adverb + للمالية</li> <li>11.9 Oblique Infinitive + للمالية</li> <li>11.10 Cardinal Numbers 71-80</li> <li>11.11 (Conversation)</li> </ul>

11.13	Songs: التجها توہم چلتے ہیں	251
	یہ دو تی ہم نہیں میرے من کی گنگا	2.52
	میرے من کی گنگا	252
11.14	Vocabulary	253
Chapt	er 12	
12.1	Simple Past Tense	256
12.2	The Simple Past Tense of Intransitive Verbs	258
12.3	The Case of باتا To Go"	260
12.4	The Case of Cr "To Be, To Happen, To Become"	261
12.5	Relatives and Correlatives	265
12.6	The Particles 2 and 2	270
12.7	The Interrogative Decid	273
12.8	Repetition of Adjectives	273
12.9	Cardinal Numbers 81-90	276
12.10	(Conversation) گفتگو	276
	Conversation Practice	279
12.12	اے میر ی زہرہ جبین تجھے معلوم نہیں :Songs میرے سپنوں کی رانی کب آئیگی تو	280
		281
	عشق بنا کیا مرنا یارا	281
12.13	Vocabulary	282

### Chapter 13

13.1 The Simple Past Tense of Transitive Verbs

286

کرنا، دینا، لینا The Case of	288
13.3 Negating the Simple Past Tense	288
13.4 The Present Perfect Tense	292
13.5 The Past Perfect Tense	295
13.6 Cardinal Numbers 91-100	297
(Conversation) گفتگو 13.7	297
13.8 Conversation Practice	300
میرے گھر آئی ایک شخص پری :13.9 Songs	300
میرے گھر آئی ایک شخص پری :I3.9 Songs پیار ہوا اقرار ہوا ہے	301
13.10 Vocabulary	302
Chapter 14	
14.1 Lonstructions	305
14.2 Verb Stem + تَجَلَنا + Construction	308
14.3 The Oblique Infinitive + とう Construction	310
14.4 Compound Verbs	
(A) Verb Stem + Aspect Indicators: ليناء وينا، جانا، پرناء	
بيثصناء ۋالنا	312
(B) Verb Stem + tl Construction	315
14.5 Introduction to the Subjunctive	318
(Conversation) تُعْتَكُو 14.6	323
14.7 Conversation Practice	326

جب کوئی بات گمڑ جاتے : 14.8 Songs	326
ونیاک سیر کرلو!	327
کیا خوب لگتی ہو، بڑی سُندر دِکھتی ہو	327
14.9 Vocabulary	329
Chapter 15	
اتو and اگر and الکر 15.1 Condition-Result Clauses with	332
15.2 Expressing Presumptions and Suppositions with the Verb	336
זכו	
15.3 Expressing Compulsion with the Verb	339
15.4 Passives	342
15.5 Passive Intransitive Verbs	346
15.6 t as a Rhetorical Particle	350
(Conversation) گفتگو 15.7	351
15.8 Conversation Practice	355
تختم ديکھا تو يہ جاناصم Songs:	356
کہو نا پیار ہے کہو تا پیار ہے زندہ باد، زندہ باد، اے محبت زندہ باد !	357
زندہ باد، زندہ یاد، اے محبت زندہ باد!	358
15.10 Vocabulary	359
Chapter 16	
16.1 The "Izafa"	362
16.2 Some Common Uses of Present and Past Participles	366
16.3 Present Participle and $U_7$ / Construction	371
xvii	

16.4 Present Participle and بانا Construction	372
16.5 Present Participle in the Narration of the Past	374
16.6 Past Participle and Construction	375
نہیں تو 16.7 The Uses of	377
16.8 Emphatic Negative Assertions	378
(Conversation) گفتگو 16.9	379
16.10 Conversation Practice	380
روتے ہوئے آتے ہیں سب :16.11 Songs	381
چلتے چلتے یوں ہی کوئی مِل گیا تھا	382
آپ کی یاد آتی رہی رات بھر (غزل)	382
16.12 Vocabulary	383
Reading Passages	
برت صغیر کے موسم Reading Passage One موسمی پیش گوئی Reading Passage Two	387
مو سمي پيش گوئي Reading Passage Two	388
حيدر آباد وكن Reading Passage Three	389
آئیے مُسَمَّراتيں Reading Passage Four	390
آئیے مُسَمَّرانَتیں Reading Passage Four اکبر کا شاہی دستر خوان Reading Passage Five	393
ریڈیو سے Reading Passage Six	394
اخبار سے Reading Passage Seven	396
Note on the Calendar	396
Urdu-English Glossary	398
English-Urdu Glossary	441

#### Introduction

A member of the Indo-Aryan family of languages, Urdu is spoken by over 150 million people in many parts of the South Asian subcontinent. Designated the official language of Pakistan and one of the national languages of India, Urdu is also routinely spoken as a first or second language in South Asian diaspora communities in the Middle East, South and East Africa, Western Europe, North America, and Australia. In recent decades, Urdu has been glamorized by Bollywood, India's massive film industry, which routinely commissions prominent Urdu writers and poets to write scripts and compose song lyrics for the many movies it releases every year.

Urdu first emerged as a literary language in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries when dialects of it (Gujri and Dakhani) were used in western and southern India for poetic compositions. In the late eighteenth century it received a special boost in northern India from the Mughal emperor Shah Alam II (r. 1759-1806), who had developed a special fondness for it. As the power base of the Mughal empire and the regional kingdoms that patronized Urdu eroded and finally gave way to British colonial rule over most of the subcontinent, Urdu writers adamantly sought new patrons. Whether in Hyderabad or in the Punjab, Urdu demonstrated marked resilience in the face of political upheavals.

Although Urdu has developed into a language with a great literary and cultural history, its spatial, temporal, and etymological origins are fraught with acute ambiguities, not to mention bitter controversies. The word *Urdu* itself is of Turkish origin and means "camp," most likely a reference to the surroundings of Delhi's Red Fort, at times referred to as *urdu-e mu'alla*, or "exalted camp." For many centuries, the area around the Red Fort was an important center of power for Turko-Persian dynasties originating in Central Asia, including the illustrious Mughals. It accomodated various linguistic and cultural traditions, some of which were Persianate and others Indic. Toward the end of the eighteenth century, the hybrid language of this area came to be referred to as *zaban-e urdu-e mu'alla*, or "the language of the exalted camp." This expression appears to have been truncated over time and simply became Urdu, which then came to signify the vernacular or local language spoken around the Red Fort.

Notwithstanding the use of the term Urdu to designate a specific language, it is important to remember that as late as the nineteenth century, what we today refer to as Urdu was also known as Hindi, Hindavi, Gujri, Dakhani, or Rekhta ("mixed language"). Historically, the linguistic spectrum encompassed by the Urdu/Hindi/Hindavi/Gujri/Dakhani/Rekhta framework has not been a rigid one and the boundaries and definitions of these dialects have been relatively fluid. This wide spectrum not only incorporated Persian vocabulary and a few Persian grammatical elements (Persian being the official language at many courts in pre-colonial South Asia) but also embraced elements from vernacular or local languages such as Dakhani (spoken in the Deccan), Gujarati, Avadhi, Khari Boli, and Braj.

The emergence of more rigid definitions of what constitutes Urdu is largely a consequence of British colonial policies and the growth of religiously based nationalisms in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. As a result, many aspects of culture that were common to both Hindus and Muslims, including language, came to be perceived exclusively through religious lenses. Many came to believe that Urdu, because it was written in the Perso-Arabic script, reflected an Islamic orientation. Thus, a language that had to that point been spoken by Hindus and Muslims alike, and its script learned by all peoples regardless of their religious orientation, became inextricably linked to South Asian Muslim identity. Such a narrow association of the language with Islam alone overlooked two important facts: first, millions of South Asian Muslims did not speak Urdu, and second, many Hindus were counted among its greatest poets, writers, and devotees. In the eyes of the religious nationalists, Hindi, on the other hand, the language written in the Devanagari script and drawing vocabulary from Sanskrit, came to be identified with Hindus. Notwithstanding these narrow demarcations distinguishing Urdu from Hindi, Premchand, a renowned author who has been claimed by partisans on both sides of the Urdu/Hindi divide to be one of their own, declared: "In my view, Hindi and Urdu are one and the same language. When they have common verbs and subjects, there can be no doubt of their being one."

Many a writer in South Asia has continued to challenge the constraints that have been placed on these languages by freely mixing idioms. In response to the religious nuances that have come to surround both Hindi and Urdu, a handful of leaders (including Mahatma Gandhi) and writers (Sajjad Zaheer for instance), who were interested in fostering Hindu-Muslim unity, have promoted the use of the term "Hindustani" to refer to a mode of Urdu-Hindi defused of any religious charge. Unfortunately, the forces of communalism in contemporary South Asia have been so strong that this expression has failed to gain wide currency.

Although in many respects Urdu and Hindi are almost identical gramatically, in today's world Urdu is written in the Perso-Arabic script whereas Hindi is written in the Sanskrit-derived Devanagari script. Those persons and institutions who wish to focus on differences tend to identify Urdu more with the vocabulary of Persian and Arabic, and Hindi with vocabulary from Sanskrit. We should remind ourselves that these distinctions between Urdu and Hindi are from certain perspectives quite arbitrary and the inexorable speculations as to what extent, if any, these languages differ from each other can continue endlessly to no avail.

This book attempts to steer a middle course in the Urdu-Hindi divide in that it uses, for the most part, words and expressions that are mutually intelligible to self-identified Urdu-Hindi speaking communities. In writing this book, we have become convinced more than ever that languages are open-ended networks. In a language such as Urdu, cultural and temporal variations pave the way for growth and development. Expressions that are commonplace in Hyderabad, India, might be seen as archaic and even quaint in Karachi, Pakistan. In an introductory book such as this, it is impossible to cover all the variations in the language. Nor is it possible to cover all the subtle lexical and grammatical nuances. Nevertheless, we hope that the course provides students with a strong enough foundation to pursue more advanced study. For those students who are interested in the highly Persianized form of Urdu that is commonly used in newspapers and journals, we have included sample reading passages at the end of the book.

Over the many years we have labored to produce this book, we have been deeply grateful to our wonderfully patient students for having tolerated earlier incarnations of the present work and for their invaluable suggestions. We also owe a special debt of gratitude to the following friends and colleagues who are responsible for many improvements in this book: Gaurav Shah, Ameek Ponda, Lata Parwani, Naseem Hines, Shafique Virani, Neelima Shukla-Bhatt, Arnjad Alinani, Alex Keefe, Herman van Olphen, Shahnaz Hassan, Danielle Widmann, Sunil Sharma, Amy Bard, Azhar Abbas, Carla Petievich, Hussein Rashid, and Michael Currier. Special thanks to Bill University of Texas, Austin, for carefully reading the entire manuscript and suggesting many corrections that have improved the book and to Bill Countie, Tony DiBartolo, and Margaret Keyes of Harvard's Media Production Center for their patience in recording the audio materials that accompany this course. This book would not have been possible without generous funding from the Consortium for Language Learning and Teaching and the enthusiastic support of the Consortium's executive director, Peter Patrikis.

In addition to dedicating this book to the late Annemarie Schimmel, we also wish to dedicate this work to our past, present, and future students with the hope that our efforts will inspire them to continue their study of Urdu and enable them to experience the trans-national and trans-temporal cultural traditions that Urdu embodies so well. We have given every consideration to first-time students of Urdu, that their experience of learning this language be both rewarding and enjoyable. We hope that those who use this book will come to appreciate a language that many consider the most romantic in the world.

#### How To Use This Book: A Note for Teachers and Students

The overall objective of Let's Study Urdu is to make students comfortable with reading, writing, and speaking Urdu in everyday contexts. Although the book may be used in a variety of instructional settings, it is specifically designed to fulfill the needs of a first-year (26 week) American college-level Urdu class that meets 4-5 times per week for fifty minutes per session. Depending on the speed with which students master the material, it is possible to extend the use of this book, particularly chapters 15 and 16, to the first semester of a second-year course. For each classroom session, we suggest that students spend at least an hour to an hour and a half outside of class reviewing the material and completing the relevant exercises. The book assumes that a teacher who is proficient in Urdu grammar and in reading, writing, and speaking the language is present in class to provide guidance for students. In our teaching experiences, we have noticed that the information from this book is communicated more effectively when students read assigned sections before coming to class. Keeping this in mind, the book is designed so that students can study much of the grammar explanations on their own as homework and devote the time they spend in the classroom to hearing and practicing the language. With this approach, the amount of time that the teacher needs to spend explaining grammar can be kept at a minimum, with classroom contact time being devoted to fostering interactive and learner-centered activities. The book is accompanied by an audio component that will help students develop their reading, speaking, and listening skills.

This book assumes that students have a working knowledge of the Urdu writing system and, as a result, it uses almost no transliteration. To attain mastery of the Urdu script, we recommend the companion volume to this book, *Let's Study Urdu: An Introduction to the Script* (New Haven: Yale University Press, 2008).

#### Format

Each chapter is divided into several sections, with each section usually devoted to the introduction of a particular point of grammar or idiomatic construction. After a series of examples illustrating the relevant grammar, students are called upon to complete the relevant exercises, labelled as Reading and Translation Drills and Substitutions. These exercises are meant to reinforce the grammar that the student has learned in that section. While the Reading and Translation Drills stress reading and comprehension skills, the Substitutions emphasize writing skills as well as recall of vocabulary items. Some sections of the book include English to Urdu translation exercises that help students develop their writing skills and reinforce grammar and vocabulary. If the translation exercises are done orally, they can assist students in generating Urdu within limited contexts so as to improve speaking proficiency. The first eight chapters of the book also contain Pronunciation Drills that are designed to help students understand Urdu syllabification and develop greater competency in pronouncing retroflexive, dental, palatal, aspirated, and nasal sounds as well as those letters borrowed from Arabic and Persian languages. The penultimate components of each chapter are the contextual dialogues, January (Conversation) and Conversation Practices, which integrate vocabulary with the grammar units introduced in the various sections of the chapter. These dialogues also help in the development of reading and communication skills. As the book advances and students increase their command over grammar and vocabulary, the dialogues flow more naturally. The تفتكو (Conversation) sections of each chapter are connected to each other by a soap opera-like drama featuring two characters, Raj and Nargis, and their families. As the Raj-Nargis romance unfolds from chapter to chapter, students

are exposed to the language as it is spoken in a variety of everyday contexts. At the same time, the ongoing romance keeps them wondering and anticipating what will develop in the next chapter. These contextual dialogues are followed by popular Songs, taken for the most part from Bollywood, India's renowned film industry. Most of these songs, whether in excerpted form or in their entirety, are romantic in theme and their selection has been carefully keyed to the grammar sections. The rationale for this activity is fourfold: to develop aural comprehension skills, to appreciate certain flexibilities and nuances of Urdu grammar, to enhance pronunciation through singing, and to provide exposure to a very significant element of South Asian culture, whether in the Subcontinent or in the diaspora. We recommend that every class session devote at least 5 minutes to listening to and singing these songs. Students are not expected to totally comprehend the songs since they often require a knowledge of Urdu-Hindi prosody to which they have not been exposed. We recommend that after students have mastered a song, they watch a video clip of it from the Bollywood film in which it appears so as to be exposed to its visual context. To facilitate the identification of the films from which these songs are excerpted, we have included a list. We hope that the list will also be helpful for those who wish to locate the lyrics of the songs in their entirety from various websites on the Internet. Every chapter ends with a Vocabulary section that lists all new vocabulary items introduced in that unit. These vocabulary items are also found in the English-Urdu and Urdu-English glossaries that appear at the end of the book. After Chapter 16, the book contains several Reading Passages based on radio and television broadcasts, newspaper extracts, popular jokes, and recipes. The passages integrate major grammar points of the book and are designed to further strengthen reading and translation skills of culturally authentic language.

#### Suggested Teaching Strategies

Although the book provides plenty of mechanical and structured exercises and activities, teachers and students are encouraged to utilize the material in the book in an open-ended and creative manner. The Reading and Translation Drills are not only tailored to enhance reading and translation skills, but they may also be used effectively in dictation and aural comprehension exercises. They may also be creatively transformed into games. For example, the words composing one of the sentences included in the drills may be written individually on separate index cards to create a "jigsaw" puzzle that students need to solve by reproducing the original sentence with the various components in correct grammatical order. The Substitutions, a less controlled activity, may lead students to bring in new vocabulary words, an exercise that can be particularly effective when they are working in pairs. The Translation exercises may be written by students on the board in the classroom to assess grammar, idiomatic usage, spelling, and competency of the script. The Jand (Conversation) and Conversation Practice sections present students with basic situations which they can reproduce through role-playing activities that bring in new vocabulary words and grammar structures from previous chapters. They can form the basis of skits which can be presented "live" in class or recorded on video. Students may also be creative in developing scenarios based on vocabulary from the songs.

Many of these strategies lend themselves to group activities or students working in pairs to elicit numerous creative responses. The class can be divided into groups, with each group creating situations or exercises that expand upon the material that the students have encountered in class. Groups may also compete with each other on the basis of vocabulary acquisition and degrees of comprehension. Activities based on students working in groups or pairs should aim at maximizing peer-facilitated learning that ensures in-depth mastery of the material.

#### Bibliography of Works Consulted

- Barker, Muhammad Abd al-Rahman, et al. Spoken Urdu: A Course in Urdu. 3 vols. Ithaca: Spoken Language Services, 1990 [1987].
- Barker, Muhammad Abd al-Rahman, et al. An Urdu Newspaper Reader. Ithaca: Spoken Language Services, 1986.

Bhatia, Tej. A History of the Hindi-Hindustani Grammatical Tradition. Leiden: E.J.Brill, 1987. Bhatia, Tej, and Ashok Koul. Colloquial Urdu. London: Routledge, 2000.

- Jain, Usha. Introduction to Hindi Grammar. Berkeley: Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, University of California, 1995.
- Kalsi, A. S., et al. Modern Urdu Texts. Urdu Short Stories. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1991.
- Matthews, David J., and Mohammed Kasim. Teach Yourself Urdu. London: McGraw Hill/Contemporary Books, 2003.
- Matthews, David J., and Christopher Shackle. A Selection of Twentieth Century Urdu Verse. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1991.

McGregor, R. S. Outline of Hindi Grammar. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1999.

Naim, C. M. Introductory Urdu. 2 vols. Chicago: South Asia Language and Area Center, University of Chicago, 1999.

Naim, C. M. Readings in Urdu: Prose and Poetry. Honolulu: East West Press, 1965.

Narang, Gopi Chand. Readings in Urdu Literary Prose. Madison: University of Wisconsin, South Asia Center, 1968. Platts, J. A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English. 1st Indian edition. Delhi:

Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers, [1930] reprint 1977.

Schimdt, Ruth Laila. Urdu: An Essential Grammar. London: Routledge, 1999.

Shackle, Christopher, and Rupert Snell. Hindi and Urdu since 1800: A Common Reader.

London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1990.

### Film Sources for Songs Cited in the Book

Chapter	Song	Film (Year)	Lyricist
1	چلیا میرا نام	Chaliya (1960)	Qamar Jalalabadi
2	آواره بول	Awara (1951)	Shailendra
2	مير اجوتا ہے چاپانی	Shree 420 (1955)	Shailendra
3	بيه دُنيا گول ٻ	Chaudhvin ka Chand (1960)	Shakil Badayuni
3	بيدول ديواند ہے	Ishq par Zor Nahiin (1970)	Anand Bakshi
4	میں پل دو پل کا شاہر ہوں	Kabhi Kabhi (1976)	Sahir Ludhiyanvi
4	بہ نینا، بہ کاچل، بہ زلفیں	Dil Se Mile Dil (1978)	Amit Khanna
4	محمر تيرى سوله	Beqabu (1996)	Rahat Indori
5	ول ہے کہ مانتا تہیں	Dil hai ki mantaa nahiiri (1991)	Faiz Anwar
5	یاد تیری جب آتی ہے	Private recording: Gaurav Shah	
6	زندگ إمتحان ليتى ہے	Naseeb (1981)	Anand Bakshi
6	میرا دل بھی کتنا پاگل ہے	Saajan (1991)	Sameer
7	ايتها توجم چلتے ميں	Aan milo sajna (1970)	Anand Bakshi
7	ياد آرجي ٻ	Love Story (1981)	Anand Bakshi
7	شام د حل ربی ہے	Private recording: Gaurav Shah	
8	شام ڈھلر بی ہے میر کی جان کچھ بھی کچیئے سانسوں کی ضرورت ہے جیسے	Chhalia (1960)	Qamar Jalalabadi
8	سانسوں کی ضرورت ہے جیسے	Acishiqui (1990)	Sameer
8	آتکھوں میں توچیز بڑی ہے مست مست	Album recording Aryans	Jai Walia
9	توچ برى ب مت مت	Mohra (1994)	Anand Bakshi

9	باغوں میں بہارہ؟	Aradhna (1969)	Anand Bakshi
9	تم سے ملنے کی تمنا ہے	Saajan (1991)	Sameer
10	جا بجر محمد الم	Bobby (1973)	Anand Bakshi
10	ایک پیادکانغہ	Shor (1972)	Santosh Anand
11	ابتها تو تهم چلتے بیں	Aan milo sajnaa (1970)	Anand Bakshi
11	یہ دو تی ہم نہیں توڑیکھ	Sholay (1975)	Anand Bakshi
11	بولرادها يول شقكم ہوگا کہ شہيں	Sangam (1964)	Shailendra
12	اے میری زہرہ جیں	Waqt (1965)	Sahir Ludhyanvi
12	میرے سپنوں کی رافی کب آئیگی	Aradhana (1969)	Anand Bakshi
12	عِثق بناكيا مرنا يارا	Taal (1999)	Anand Bakshi
13	میرے گھرآنکایک نتھی پری	Kabhi Kabhi (1976)	Sahir Ludhyanvi
13	بیار موا اقرار موا	Shree 420 (1955)	Shailendra
14	جب کوئی بات گجڑ جائے	Jurm (1990)	Indeewar
14	دُنیا کی سیر کر او	Around the World in \$8 (1967)	Shailendra
14	كمياخوب لكتى موء بيزى مُندر ويحتى مو	Dharmatma (1975)	Indeewar
15	تحقیحہ دیکھا توبہ جانا صنم کہوناپیارہے کہوتا پیارہے	Dilwale Dulhaniya (1995)	Anand Bakshi
15	كبوناپيارې كبونا پيارې	Kaho Naa Pyaar Hai (2000)	Ibrahim Ashiq
15	زندهباد، زندهباد، اے محبت زنده باد	Mughal-e Azam (1960)	Shakil Badayuni
16	روتے ہوئے آتے ہیں ب	Muqaddar ka Sikandar (1978)	Anjaan
16	چلتے چلتے یوں چی کوئی مِل حمیا تھا	Pakeezah (1971)	Kaifi Azmi
16	آپ کی یاد آتی رہی رات بھر	Gaman (1979)	Makhdum
			N fat to date.

Mohiuddin

xxxi

#### Chapter 1

#### 1.1 Word Order in the Urdu Sentence

In Urdu the normal word order in the simplest sentence, reading from right to left, is as follows:

2	1
Verb	Subject
זפט	یں

#### Iam

Urdu sentences thus generally begin with the subject and end with the verb so that all other

elements of the sentence fall between the subject and the verb.

3	2	1
Verb	Complement	Subject
זיפט	امریکن	
	and a start for the second sec	

I am American.

The complement can be a noun or an adjective:

3	2	1
Verb	Complement	Subject
זינט	خوبصورت	یں

#### I am beautiful.

When such a sentence is put in the negative, the verb can be replaced with the negative particle

which can mean either "no" or "not."

3	2	2	1
Negative Particle	e Compl	ement	Subject
تېيں	يكن	امر	يس
	I am not A	merican.	
For a more emphatic ton	e, نبيس can be followed	by the verb:	
4	3	2	1
Verb	Negative Particle	Complement	Subject
يول	تہیں	امریکن	یں
	I am <u>not</u> A	merican.	
For an even more empha	tic tone, the negative par	ticle نہیں can come afte	er the verb:
4	3	2	1
Negative Particle	Verb	Complement	Subject
نہیں	ہوں	امر يكن	یں
	I am (definitely/certa	inly) not American.	
	1.2 Conjugation of Ver	b tr and Pronouns	

The first Urdu verb we will conjugate is the most common verb:  $\mathfrak{tr}$  (to be).

### Singular Forms

Translation	<b>Conjugational Form</b>	Pronoun
I am	זפט	یں
You (least formal) are	ę	ţ
You (informal) are	N	قم
You (formal) are		آپ

He/She/It is	ç	2/05
	Plural Forms	
We are	U₫	r
You are	<b>9</b> 7	ŕ
You are	Už	آپ
They are	Ut	~ 103

is the most common first person pronoun, although some people use the first person plural pronoun  $\uparrow^{i}$  in contexts that require a first person singular pronoun. The use of  $\uparrow^{i}$  in place of is generally considered a mark of humility, though in some instances, under the influence of English idiom, the substitution is used to connote the "royal we." In several regions of North India, people use  $\uparrow^{i}$  in the  $\downarrow^{i}$  context quite commonly.

میں امریکن ہوں۔

I am American.

ہم امریکن ہیں۔

I am American.

We are American.

 $\hat{f}$  is the least formal of the second person pronouns and should not be used unless one is on intimate terms with the addressee or unless an insult is intended. It is commonly used to address young children and sometimes servants as well. Interestingly,  $\hat{f}$  is used when addressing God. In some regions, this pronoun is also used to address one's mother.

You are good.

is the common second person pronoun. It can be used in addressing one person or several persons who are younger than you or a person or persons with whom you are on fairly familiar terms. It is also frequently employed to address individuals of a lower social status than the speaker, e.g., servants, taxi drivers.

You (singular) are Indian.

You (plural) are Indian.

 $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  is the most polite and formal second person singular and plural form. When addressed to one person,  $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  expresses respect. Thus, when you speak to a person for the first few times or when you address a person older than yourself,  $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  should be used. In general  $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  can be used for any person to whom you want to show respect.  $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  is also used to express plurality, i.e. "you" (plural). On account of its use both for respect and plurality, the meaning of  $\psi^{\tilde{l}}$  is dependent on context. For example, the following sentence has two possible meanings:

You (respectful) are a student.

#### You are students.

<u>Note</u>: In highly formal speech  $\downarrow f$  can sometimes be used as a third person pronoun of respect meaning "he or "she." This usage, which is even more formal and polite than the use of plural  $03 \neq 4$  (see below), is only used for persons accorded the highest degree of respect, such as religious personalities. Example:

He (highly honorific) is a very famous professor.

when used as pronouns can be either singular or plural, meaning "he," "she," "it," or
 "they." Again, when used in a plural context, these pronouns can connote respect for a single individual:

وه يروفير --

He is a professor.

He (respectful) is a professor.

They are professors.

The latter example is ambiguous because  $\mathcal{J}_{\underline{s}}^{\underline{s}}$  can be used for a singular subject who is spoken of

with respect or for a plural subject.

1.1 - 1.2 Reading and Translation Drill

جين يهودي --بلير بكھ ہے۔ ٣- ئام كروز مشيورب-لتا مشهور نهيس-تو شدر ب-آپ خوبصورت بيں۔

Translate into Urdu:

- 1. He is Indian.
- 2. She is Pakistani.
  - 3. They are Russian.
  - 4. You (least formal) are not a student.
  - 5. We are doctors.
  - Brooke Shields is very famous.
- 7. Anita is not famous.
- 8. Sean Connery is very handsome.
- 9. We are human.
- 10. He is not Christian. He is Hindu.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of \$1

ا۔ میں عیسائی \_\_\_ اور راج ہندو \_\_\_ ۲\_ہم ہندوستانی \_\_ ۳۔ وہ ڈاکٹر \_\_ ۳۔ کرن اور رام بھی ڈاکٹر ۵۔ تو مشہور ۲۔ تم شندر \_ ۷۔ شیلا اور پوجا بھی خوبصورت

# 1.3 Greetings and 3. as Particle of Respect

Urdu does not have a uniform mode of greeting. The manner in which one person greets another is contingent upon a variety of factors: the age and gender of the two speakers, prior acquaintance or intimacy, their educational background, and the region in which they are located. At times, the perceived religious identity of the person who is being greeted may also play a part. As a result, the several forms of Urdu (and Hindi) greetings carry overtones of social status, regional identity, and religious affiliation. The following are a few commonly heard expressions:

1) آواب عرض (literally, "respect") and آواب عرض (literally, "[my] respects are presented [to you])." These greetings, which are formal in tone, are religiously neutral in that they can be used between persons of different or identical religious affiliation. Depending on context, they may be said by a person of a younger age, or of an inferior social status, to an older person or one with a socially superior status. They are often accompanied by a gesture of respect in which the speaker moves his/her right hand to the forehead. Sometimes the gesture itself is used without any words and the act is called "أولب كرئا" or "ملام كرئا" ("presenting greetings"). If both greeters are of the same rank or not intimate with each other, the reply to these greetings is also join or age may respond with a nod and the blessing "منا ربع" ("literally, "may you live long"). For some people is a difference in rank or age, then the person with the superior rank or associated with the culture of nineteenth- and twentieth-century Urdu-speaking aristocracies of Delhi, Lucknow, and Hyderabad (India). Hence they choose not to use it as they feel it is outdated or old-fashioned. In contemporary Pakistan ("salaam alaikum") and its response وعليكم سلام ("wa alaikum salaam") have come to replace وعليكم سلام and آواب عرض and تراب عرض the standard formal greetings.

2) السلام عليكم (pronounced "as-salaam alaikum") or السلام عليكم ("salaam alaikum") is an Arabic greeting meaning "peace be upon [with] you." It is a common greeting between Muslims in South Asia and, indeed, all over the Muslim world. The reply to this greeting is وعليكم السلام ("wa alaikum as-salaam") or وعليكم سلام or ("wa alaikum salaam") "may peace be upon you as well." As mentioned above, this greeting has become prevalent in Pakistan, where in some ultra-conservative circles it has become a marker of Muslim religious identity. It is important to note, however, that notwithstanding the tendency in contemporary South Asia to politicize and polarize greetings along religious lines, historically this is not a greeting that was exclusively limited to Muslims. Hence, non-Muslims in some regions of South Asia and elsewhere still continue to use it when greeting their Muslim acquaintances and friends.

3) نفت is commonly used all over India as a form of greeting. Some consider it to be a customary "Hindu" greeting, although a large number of non-Hindus in India use it as well when greeting their Hindu friends and neighbours. نمكار is a slightly more formal form of it. The reply to this greeting is the same: نمكار or نمكار. These greetings are all-purpose and cover a range of usages such as "good morning," "good afternoon," "good evening," and also "goodbye." The saying of نمك is a companied by a hand gesture: the greeter joins the palms of both hands in front of himself or herself.

4) بلك and "hello" and "hi" are informal greetings common among the "English-medium" educated and those who want a transreligious greeting which avoids any specific religious identification. In modern-day India, it is quite common to hear, especially in urban areas, the greetings "hello" or "hi" at the beginning of a lengthy conversation that is entirely in Urdu/Hindi. 5) After the initial exchange of greetings, it is customary to inquire about health and well-being. This inquiry may take place in an informal or formal manner depending on context. In more informal contexts, and perhaps becoming increasingly widespread under the influence of English forms, the phrases "بي بي اي و " or "بي بي بي بي بي الانتقار (literally, "how are you?") are frequently used. Equally informal is the ubiquitous "بي حال بي حال " literally, "what is [your] condition/state?" This has the same nuance as the American slang "what's up?" Usual responses are : "بي خي بي " or "بي خي خي تا" (literally, "I am fine"). A slightly more colloquial response uses the echo compound " بي خي تون"

6) The etiquette of formal Urdu speech requires the use of polite and even ceremonious language. For this reason, the question " مَرْ لَفَ اللَّهُ عَرْ اللَّ مَرْ لَفَ اللَّهُ عَرْ اللَّهُ الللَّ

7) The asking of names can also be informal or formal. The informal "? " " " " ("What is your name?") is most commonly heard. In formal contexts, polite and respectful phrases are employed: "? بقريف كيا ب كا إسم شريف كيا ب?" or " ? " or " ? "

(literally, "What is your noble (شرکیف) name?" or "What is your auspicious (شرکیف) name?"). Humility and modesty require the response to begin: "میرا تام----ب" (literally, "My name

8) Before taking leave of a person, one may formally or politely ask: " الجازت و شَحْلَتُ الله العامي (literally, "please give permission [to leave]"). Just as there is no uniform greeting when two Urdu speakers meet, there are no consistent words of parting, either. Traditionally " أَحُدُ الحَافَظ العالي العامي العامي العامي المعالي المحمد المحم

9) The particle  $\mathcal{S}_{+}$  can be attached to  $\mathcal{Y}_{+}$  (yes) or  $\mathcal{S}_{+}$  (no) to indicate respect for the person whom one is addressing. At times, the use of this particle by itself suggests affirmation of the validity of a statement or command:

Is he a student?

Yes, he is a student.

# جي شہيں۔

No, he is not.

-3.

Yes, he is.

# **1.4 Asking Questions**

There are several ways of asking questions in Urdu:

1. With a questioning intonation:

With this option no interrogative word is used and the questioning intonation consists of a slight rise in tone when pronouncing the complement. In this example the complement is the noun "American"; hence the intonation will rise slightly when the speaker pronounces this word.
2. With the interrogative word \$\sum\_{a}\$ at the beginning of the question:

# Are you American?

This is the simplest way of turning a statement into a question. Most questions that begin with  $\int can$  be answered with either "yes" or "no"; hence this type of question is commonly called a yes-or-no question.

3. With the interrogative word of the end of the statement:

آپ امريکن يي، کيا؟

Are you American?

#### You are American, aren't you?

There is an implication in this question that the questioner already knows the answer and is trying to confirm it.

4. With the interrogative word or words immediately before the verb:

## What are you?

Note that although the literal meaning of  $\bigvee$  is "what," it cannot always be translated into idiomatic English. Only the  $\bigvee$  in example no. 4 can be translated into English as "what." Sometimes  $\bigvee$  may also have an idiomatic meaning in Urdu that is not readily apparent in the literal English translation. Thus, the sentence in no. 4 above could, depending on the tone and intonation of voice with which it was said, be a rhetorical question "What are you?" or "Who are you?" implying that "you are nothing." Awareness of such nuances develops gradually through familiarity with the language and its cultural contexts.

5. With the use of July

like لي is another interrogative word. It means "where." Like لي it usually comes right before the verb:

# Where is he?

## 1.3 - 1.4 Reading and Translation Drill

آپ ہندوستانی ہیں؟ جی نہیں میں امریکن ہوں۔ کیا، وہ بھی امریکن ہیں؟

Translate into Urdu:

1. Are mey sudents?	1.	Are the	y students?
---------------------	----	---------	-------------

- 2. No, they are professors.
- 3. Where am I?
- 4. Is Nargis beautiful?

- 5. Yes, she is beautiful.
- 6. Yes, she is intelligent, too.
- 7. Where is Amit?

# 1.5 Urdu Postpositions and Definite and Indefinite Articles

#### I am at Harvard.

The word "at" in the above sentence is a preposition. It is called a preposition because it comes before the locative noun, Harvard. Unlike English, Urdu does not have prepositions. It has instead postpositions. In other words, the equivalent of "in" or "at" in Urdu ( $\cancel{2}$ ) will follow the locative noun and not precede it:

verb	postposition	locative noun	subject
يمول	یں	بارورڈ	یس
	ں يول-	میں گھر میں	
	I am in/at	the house.	

يں كالج ميں ہوں۔

I am in/at college.

Note in the previous examples, the Urdu equivalents of the English articles "a," "an," and "the" are missing. This is because Urdu does not possess distinctive definite and indefinite articles. Thus  $\mathcal{A}$  can be translated as "a house" or "the house." One way of emphasizing the indefinite nature of  $\mathcal{A}$  is by placing the numerical adjective for one " $\mathcal{A}$ " before it:

a house or one house ایک گھر یں ایک کالج میں ہوں۔

## 1.6 Adjectives of Nationality

Many adjectives of nationality can formed by adding "U" to the country's name:

جاپانی	-	ي	+	Japan جاپان
ردى	=	ي	+	びリノ Russia
<i>ہند</i> وستانی		ي	+	India ہندوستان
پاکستانی	-	ي	+	Pakistan پاکستان
بظله ديثى	-	ي	+	Bangladesh بنظله وليش
چینی	=	ي	+	China چين
ايراني	i, èi	ي	+	Iran أيران

Two important adjectives do not follow this pattern:

امریکہ America امریکن انگلیتان England انگریز

Note: برطانید in place of امریکن is also acceptable. برطانید "Britain" can also be used to refer to United Kingdom. The adjectives انگریزی and انگستان refer to English as an attributive adjective rather than as an adjective of nationality. Thus:

These pants are English سیہ پیٹلون انگستانی ہے۔

# 1.5 - 1.6 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate into Urdu:

- 1 Where is New York?
- 2. New York is in America.
- 3. Is America beautiful?
- 4. No, America is not beautiful. Canada is beautiful.
- 5. Where are you (informal)?
- 6. I am in a (one) house.
  - 7. Where is Lisa? She is at the university.
- 8. Are Raj and Nargis in the house?
- 9. Yes, they are in the house.
- 10. Where is Harlem? Is Harlem in New York?

## 1.7 Introduction to Possessive Adjectives

In this section, we will introduce only three possessive adjectives. A more detailed discussion and the grammatical construction of these adjectives will be included later. Possessive adjectives in Urdu, as in English, come before the nouns they modify.

Verb

Noun

17

**Possessive** Adjective

12

My name is Ali.

Complement

على

The three possessive adjectives introduced in this section are:

My = 1 1

آپکا/آپکا= (formal)

أن كا / أنكا = His/her (formal) or their

1.7 Reading and Translation Drill

# Translate into Urdu:

- 1. His name is Amit. He is American.
  - 2. Her name is Devi. She is Indian.
- 3. Their house is in Pakistan.
  - 4. Are they Pakistani? No, they are definitely not Pakistani.
  - 5. What is their work?
  - 6. They are all students. They are Iranian.
  - 7. Your house is beautiful.
  - 8. It's your house.
  - 9. Where is Dacca? Dacca is in Bangladesh.
  - 10. She too is Sikh. She is a professor at Panjab (بنجاب) University.

# 1.8 Pronunciation Drill: Short and Long Vowels

Column 2		Column 1	
ميت	مِت	آب	اب
چيت	چت	کاب	كب
ريت	ړت	٢٢	م
ميك	مِب	נוץ	17
AR .	دم ا	ريج	11
يمر ن	L.	روم	د م
يو	سو	دام -	د م
مونا	موٹا	تاب	ب
مویٰ *	موحم	تان	تن
مجد	معرالجه	ران	رن
مالِک	خلک	جام	ج
مالى	خنود	مات	مت
سالن	مالن	رات	زت
صقا	دوا	ساجن	بجن
طاب	تاب	شبافر	متر
رايط	ثابت	صقاتى	سفيد
ألم	چلم	(T	مام

\*The vertical line above the letter "ye" is a sign for a special letter, "alif maqsura," which occurs occasionally in certain words of Arabic origin. It is pronounced as "aa." The "ye" functions simply as a carrier and is not pronounced. Hence the last syllable in this word would be pronounced "saa." Other examples are: عينى "iisaa,"= Christ; لونى "adnaa," = lowly; فتوى =

"fatwaa," = legal opinion based on Muslim jurisprudence.

(Conversation) تُعْتَكُو 1.9	
آداب عرض جناب۔	زگمی:
خمستے، مزارج شریف؟	داج:
مہریانی، کیا حال ہے؟	زگن:
سب ٹھیک ہے۔ آپ کا تھھ نام؟	راج:
میرا نام نرگ ہے۔ آپ کا اسم شریف کیا ہے؟	زگمی:
ميرا نام دان ہے۔ كيا، آپ امريكن بيں؟	راج:
بی ہاں۔ میں امر کین ہوں۔ کیا، آپ بھی امریکن ہیں؟	زگمی:
نہیں۔ نہیں۔ میں ہندوستانی ہوں۔ آپ کا کام امریکہ میں کیا ہے؟	راج:
میں امریکہ میں ڈاکٹر ہوں۔ اور آپ؟	زگمی:
میں اِسٹوڈنٹ ہوں۔	15:
الچھا۔ آپ کہاں اِسٹوڈنٹ میں؟	نرگس:
میں بارورڈ میں اِسٹوڈنٹ ہوں۔	15:
ہارورڈ میں؟! کیا، آپ کا گھر کیمبرنج* میں ہے؟	زگى:
نہیں۔ میرا گھر سمرویل ** میں ہے۔ آپ کا گھر کہاں ہے؟	راج:
ميرا گھر کر کلنڈ اسٹريٹ *** پرہے۔ اپتھا۔ اجازت و يجيئے۔ پھر ملينگے۔	زگی:
خدا حافظ-	راج:
خدا حافظ _	زگم:

\* Cambridge

\*\* Somerville

\*\*\* Kirkland Street

#### 1.10 Conversation Practice

Amit: Hello, Sheila, how are you?

Sheila: Fine, thanks. Are you Indian?

Amit: No. I am American. I am a student at Harvard. Are you American?

Sheila: No. I am Japanese. My house is in Tokyo.

Amit: Tokyo! Tokyo is very beautiful. Where is your house in Tokyo?

Sheila: My house is on Hito Street.

Amit: What is your job in Tokyo?

Sheila: I am a professor in Tokyo. I am at Tokyo University.

Amit: Good! We'll meet again. Goodbye.

Sheila: Goodbye.

1.11 Song

چھلیا میرا نام۔ چھلنا میرا کام۔ ہندو، مسلِم، سکھ، عیسانی سب کو میرا سلام۔

Glossary for Song

to cheat, to deceive جملتا

to everyone, to all = سب کو

greetings = 1

# 1.12 Vocabulary

Note: The gender of nouns is indicated in parentheses: m - masculine; f - feminine

	1
again, then	Pr
all	مب
also, too	میسی
America (m)	امریکہ
American	امریکن، امریکی
and	اور
Bangladesh (m)	بنظبه دليش
beautiful	تحوبصورت 1 سُندر
Britain	برطانيه
China (m)	چین
Chinese	چ <u>ی</u> نی
Christian	عپسائی
condition, state (m)	حال
Dacca (m)	ڈھاکہ بر ان
disposition, health (m)	217
how are you? (formal)	مِزان شريف؟
(lit. your noble	
disposition?)	
doctor (m/f)	ڈاکٹر انگلستان
England (m)	انگلتتان

English (nationality)	أتكريز
English (adj)	آتگریز انگستانی، انگریزی انگریزی
English (the language)	انگریزی
famous	مشهور
fine	المحميك
gentleman, sir, mister	صاحب، جناب
give permission to leave (got to	صاحب، جناب إچازت و يجيئ
run)	
good; all right; o.k.	القرا
goodbye (lit. God be your	ارتھا خُدا حافظ
protector)	
greetings/hello/hi	آداب عرض، آداب، نمستے
to a Muslim (reply in	آداب عرض، آداب، نمستے سلام علیکم (وعلیکم سلام)
parentheses)	
he/she	ده ، م
his/her (formal)	أن كا/أنكا
Hindu	وينذو
house (m)	گھر، مکان
human being (m)	إنسان
1	أن كا/أنكا يہندو گھر، مكان اِنسان پيں
my; mine	ير ا
in	یں
23	

India (m)	ومندوستان / بھارت
Indian	وہند وستان / بھارت ہند'وستانی
intelligent, clever	يوشيار
Iran (m)	ايران
Iranian	إيراني
Japan (m)	جاپان
Japanese	جايانى
Jew	يَّبَوُدى شيلم، شسلمان
Muslim	شیلم، شسلمان
name (m)	نام
auspicious name (m)	شهر نام
(formal Hindi)	
noble name (m)	اسم شريف
(formal Urdu)	
no, not	جی نہیں، نہیں
noble, honorable	شريف
office (m)	دفتر
on	í.
Pakistan (m)	پاکستان
Pakistani	پارستانی
Russia (m)	پارستان پارستانی ژوس ژوی
Russian	ژوی

see you soon (lit. we will meet	بجر مليتك
again)	
Sikh	سيكھ
student (m/f)	طالب عِلم، إستودْنت،
	سِکھ طالبِ عِلم، اِسٹوڈنٹ، چھاتر(ہندی) شکریہ برہانی
thanks (m)	ش <i>کر</i> یہ
thanks (lit. kindness) (f)	يتمر بانی
they	وه» ہے
their	וטא/ וזא
university (f)	يو نيور سخي
very; many	
we	r
what; also interrogative particle	کیا
where	کہاں
work/job (m)	کام بی بال، بال تو
yes	تى بان، بان
you least formal	ţ
informal	لخم
formal	آپ
your (formal)	'پ آپکا/آپکا

25

## Chapter 2

#### 2.1 Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives

 $\alpha$  and  $\vartheta$  function as both demonstrative pronouns and adjectives. As demonstrative pronouns they signify, respectively, "this/these" or "that/those," their meaning depending on context. In this chapter, they are used only in their singular form. Examples:

> This is a boy.  $-\frac{1}{2}$ That is a girl.  $-\frac{1}{2}$ This is a house.  $-\frac{1}{2}$ That is a shoe.  $-\frac{1}{2}$

As demonstrative adjectives, a and b modify both singular and plural nouns and also mean "this/these" or "that/those." They are placed directly before the noun they modify. In this chapter, they will be used only with singular nouns. Examples:

#### 2.2 Cardinal Numbers 0-10

Urdu numerals are written from left to right in their number form, just as the English ones are. So 45 in Urdu is  $\uparrow^{\prime} \Delta$ . In this section we will begin with the first ten numbers.

20

ایک ا	1.1	1
33	٢	2
تين	٣	3
<i>پا</i> ر	٣	4
دو تین چار چھ آتھ نو	۵	5
8.	۲	6
<b>بات</b>	4	7
ة T	۸	8
تو	9	9
وس	1.	10

# 2.3 The Interrogative كون

is an interrogative meaning who/which. Like the other interrogative words that we have encountered so far (كمال، كيا), the preferred position of ون is right before the verb.

راج کون ہے؟ ?Who is Raj

وە لڑ کا کون ہے؟

Who is that boy?

If is the subject of the sentence, then it is placed at the beginning of a sentence.

كون - ؟؟

# Who is it?

#### 2.4 The Postposition C

in Urdu can be translated as "from" or "since." When appearing with an interrogative word,

- appears after it. Like  $\mathcal{A}$ , - is a postposition and occurs after the noun or interrogative it qualifies. An interrogative that frequently uses the postposition - is  $\mathcal{A}$  or "when."

Where is he from?

Since when has she been here?

He has been there since (lit. for) two years.

- may also be used after locatives such as "here" and "there."

here = الميال from here = سيال

there = eyU

from there = eyu

My house is far from here.

His/Their house is near [from] here.

Note also the following idiomatic usage:

far from x = content content for x = content for x = x

# 2.1 - 2.4 Reading and Translation Drill

# 2.1 - 2.4 Substitutions

Replace the phrases within brackets in the following sentences with the Urdu equivalents of the English phrases listed below.

يں ( يكساس سے) ہوں۔

from New York from California

from Pakistan

from India

from Mumbai, in India

from Tokyo, in Japan

from Montreal, in Canada

from Chicago, in Illinois

میں لاہور میں (پانچ سال سے) ہوں۔ \_٣

for two years

for one year

for three years

for four years

راج (گھر میں)( وس سال سے) ہے۔ \_~

for nine years here for eight years there for seven years in one office for six years at Harvard

(آپ کا کام) ( بارور ڈے) ( دور) ہے۔

not very near from there their school far from the office your house near from New York her work not far from the university my job

2.1 - 2.4 Translations

- 1. What is this?
- 2. This is a horse. It is my horse.
- 3. Where is Ali from?
- 4. Ali is from France.
- 5. Where in France is he from?
- 6. He is from Paris.
- 7. How long have you been here?
- 8. We have been here for ten years.

- 9. Is Boston far from New York?
- 10. No. It is not very far.

11. Who is Sheila? Sheila is a student. She is from Japan.

- 12. Where is that shoe?
- 13. This girl is very intelligent.
- 14. Their house is near New York.
- 15. His heart is not here!!

# 2.1 - 2.4 Questions

Answer the following questions in complete sentences.

# 2.5 Pronunciation Drill - Aspirations

Column 2		Column 1	
م محص	محل	Þ.	4
کھیل	کیل	یحار	يار
كھولتا	كولنا	p/s	4
گھر	ſ	پيمان	پان
گھوڑی	گورى	تتحن	تن
گدحا	كدوا	تقمان	いけ
يھائى	يتى	تتحالا	ปะ
كھانا	tК	للمتأكر	RA
<b>گھوڑا</b>	گورا	فتجهولا	東山
سمجر کی	م سبعی	جحال	چال
تنبعى	جنجى	چھال	<i>چ</i> ال
كمحال	كال	چھانا	<i>چاہ</i> نا
ڈ <i>ه</i> ول	<b>ڈو</b> ل	وهم	وم
پچل	Ļ	دحام	כוץ

(Conversation) گفتگو 2.6 زگن: نست جی۔ کیا، آپ یہاں ٹورسٹ افسر ہیں؟ ٹورسٹ افسر: جی ہاں۔ آپ کا شمھ نام کیا ہے؟ ز من بوسٹن سے ہوں۔ تورست افسر: ايتحا! بوستن كمال ب?

## 2.7 Conversation Practice

Rob: Hello, who are you?

Stranger: Hello, hello. My name is Jay. I am a tourist officer here. Are you from America?

Rob: What?! No. I am from Canada. Canada is close to America.

Stranger: Yes, yes. Canada is very famous. What do you do [lit. what is your work] in Canada? Are you a doctor? Are you a computer software engineer?

Rob: No, I am a professor. How long have you been a tourist officer?

Stranger: I have been a tourist officer for nine years. I have been in Delhi for ten years. How long have you been in Canada?

Rob: I have been in Canada for seven years. Is Jaipur far from here?

Stranger:	Jaipur? Yes, yes. Sir, what is Jaipur?
Rob:	Oh no! Are you really ( واقتلى) a tourist officer? Jaipur is very famous. It is in
	Rajasthan. You are not a tourist officer! You are a vagabond! Where are the
	police?
Stranger:	Yes, I am a vagabond. Goodbye, sir!
Rob:	Goodbye!

(Rob runs from the stranger)

2.8 Songs

۱) آواره هول یا گردش میں موں آسان کا تارا ہوں آوارہ ہوں

Glossary for Songs

revolving, turning, wandering (f) = گردِش

 $\frac{2}{2}$  = on (alternate form of  $\frac{2}{2}$ )

yet, still بجر بھی

リピ=star (m)

# 2.9 Vocabulary

boy (m)	54
eight	ة <del>ت</del> ر
far	دُور د
five	پانچ
four	<b>پا</b> ر
from	-
from where	
girl (f)	لاک
hat (f)	ٹو پی
head (m)	1
heart (m)	<i>د</i> ل
here	یہاں
horse (m)	گھوڑا
near	قريب انزديك
nine	ş
one	ایک
pants, trousers (f)	پتگون
president (m/f)	حدد
red	اییک پتگون صدر لال
seven	سات ≰ تا
shoe (m)	じき
	36

since when	کب ہے
six	8.+
sky (m)	「」
star (m)	しせ
ten	د س
that, those	69
there	وبإل
thing (f)	12
this, these	#
three	تين
vagabond, wanderer (m)	آواره
when	کب
who	کون سال <i>ا</i> برس
year (m)	
yet, still	میکر بھی جنز
zero	F.

#### Chapter 3

## 3.1 Nouns: Gender and Plural

All nouns in Urdu are either masculine or ferninine. Within the category of each gender there are two more categories: marked masculine nouns - those ending in the letter "*alif*" !- (e.g. لركل "boy") and unmarked masculine nouns - those ending in with any other sound - (e.g. لركل "boy") and unmarked masculine nouns - those ending in "*choTii ye*" (e.g. (e.g. "girl") and the unmarked ferminine nouns - those ending in "*choTii ye*" (e.g. "thing"). As a rough guideline you should remember that most nouns that end with <sup>1</sup> are masculine and those that end with ú are feminine. There are important exceptions to these rules: (water), ú (world) are feminine.

## **Common Marked Masculine Nouns**

boy	لؤكا
shoe	t <i>3</i> .
dog	Ē
banana	كيل

The word final long "*aa*" vowel that is normally indicated by the letter "*alif*" <sup>1</sup> at the end of words is indicated in some words by the letter "*choTii he*" *b*. Therefore, nouns ending in this letter are usually considered as marked masculine nouns. For example:

rent

wonder, wink, charm	بكر شمه
precious stone	تكيبنه
song, melody	نغمه

Note: The noun  $\mathcal{A}$  (place) is one of the few exceptions to this rule. Even though it ends in a "choTii he" it is a feminine noun.

# Forming Plurals of Marked Masculine Nouns

To form the plural of marked masculine nouns the final "alif" is changed to "e," i.e. "baRii ye"

boys	لاکے
shoes	<u>Z</u> 3.
dogs	ž
bananas	کیلے

(4).

Nouns that end in "*choTii he*" in the singular may retain this letter in the plural since this letter, in the word final position, may also be pronounced as "*e*." Alternatively, the "*choTii he*" may be replaced by a "*baRii ye*."

> rents کراہی کراہی کراہی کر wonders, winks, charms کر شمہ کر شم precious stones کلینہ تکلین songs, melodies کنی منع

# **Common Unmarked Masculine Nouns**

office	دفتر
house	گھر
house, buildings	مکان
name	<i>ا</i> ل
year	بال

# Forming Plurals of Unmarked Masculine Nouns

Unmarked masculine nouns in the plural are written and pronounced in the same manner as in their singular counterparts: i.e., they show no change. For example:

Singular		Plural	
office	دفتر	offices	وفتر
house	گھر	houses	گھر
name	نام	names	تام

## **Common Marked Feminine Nouns**

girl	لۈكى
bread	روٹی
hat	ٹوپی
sari	ساڑی اساڑھی

#### Forming Plurals of Marked Feminine Nouns

Marked feminine nouns, that is those that end in "*choTii ye*," form their plurals by the addition of U at the end of the singular noun:

girls	لڑ کیاں
breads	رونیاں
hats	ٹو پیاں
saris	سادی اساد هیان

# **Common Unmarked Feminine Nouns**

thing	2
night	رات
world	د نیا
table	7.

# Forming Plurals of Unmarked Feminine Nouns

Unmarked Feminine Plurals are formed with the addition of  $U_{\mu}$  to the singular noun:

things	0.72
nights	رانتیں
worlds	ڈنیا کمیں
tables	ميزيل

# Summary of endings of singular and plural nouns

Type of noun	Ending in singular	Ending in plural
Marked masculine	"aa" / or a	"e" 🚄
Unmarked masculine	any except "aa"	no change
Marked feminine	ي "ii"	یاں "iaan" پال
Unmarked feminine	any except "ii"	"en" 0

### **3.1 Translation**

Translate the following words into Urdu and provide their Urdu plurals and gender:

1.	house	7.	boy	13.	hat	19.	night
2.	human	8.	girl	14.	dog	20,	orange
3.	actor	9.	horse	15.	apple	21.	room
4.	office	10.	shoe	16.	bread	22.	photograph
5.	student	11.	thing	17.	carpet	23.	store/shop
6,	work	12.	year	18.	banana	24.	table

3.2 Attributive and Predicate Adjectives

The attributive adjective in Urdu, as in English, comes immediately before the noun it modifies.

2	1		
64	ايتحا		
noun	attributive adjective		

a good boy

On the other hand, when the adjective follows the noun or pronoun it modifies it is a predicate adjective. In Urdu, a predicate adjective occurs in a sentence whose main verb is lm. It comes after the noun/pronoun it modifies but before the verb.

2	1
1.21	KY
121	62

predicative adjective

noun

Attrib utive

That is a good boy.

Predicative

وولزكا ايتها ب-

That boy is good.

وہ لیتھا ہے۔ He is good/fine. میں ایتھا ہوں۔

I am good/fine.

### 3.3 Marked and Unmarked Adjectives

Urdu has two kinds of adjectives: the marked adjective and the unmarked adjective.

### Marked adjectives

Marked adjectives agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify. When modifying a masculine singular noun, they end in "alif" f; in "baRii ye"  $\checkmark$  when modifying a masculine plural noun; and in "choTii ye"  $\bigcup$  when modifying a feminine singular or plural noun.

### Masculine singular:

Good boy	اچھا لڑکا
Good office	ايتها دفت

#### Masculine plural:

Good boys	اچھ لاکے		
Good offices	القي دفة		

### Feminine singular:

Good girl

ا پھی لڑکی

الی بچر Good things

Feminine plural:

البهمي لزكيان Good girls المحق چزی Good things

The marked predicate adjective, like its attributive counterpart, agrees in number and gender with the noun/pronoun that precedes it.

This boy is good

These boys are good

This girl is good

These girls are good

یہ لڑکا اچھا ہے۔ یہ لڑکے اچھے ہیں یہ لڑکی اچھتی ہے به لڑ کیاں اچھتی

#### **Unmarked Adjectives**

Unmarked adjectives are those that do not end in one of the marked endings: "alif", "baRii ye"  $\sim$ , or "choTii ye"  $\mathcal{G}$ . Regardless of the gender or the number of the noun they modify, they do not change their form.

Masculine singular:

خويصورت لأكم
ہوشیار دکانواا
لال سيب

Masculine plural:

Handsome boys	خوبصورت لڑکے		
Clever shopkeepers	ہوشیار دکان والے		
Red apples	لال سيب		

## Feminine singular:

Beautiful girl	خوبصورت لزكى
Clever wife	ہوشیار ہوی
Red book	لال تمثاب

Feminine plural:

Beautiful girls	خوبصورت لزكيال		
Clever wives	ہو شیار بیویاں		
Red books	لال كتابين		

3.4 Cardinal Numbers 11-20

گياره	11
باره	11
• 2	١٣
0.) P.	10
پتدره	10
سولہ	17
07	14
الخحاره	IA
أغيس	19
ي.	۲.

Note: The spellings of numbers from 11-18 end in "choTii he" o. These numbers are pronounced the same way as they would have been if they ended in "alif" <sup>1</sup>. They do not inflect to agree with number and gender of nouns they modify as they function as unmarked adjectives.

### Ordinal numbers 1-10

Ordinal numbers usually act as marked adjectives and decline in number and gender according to the noun they modify.

Masculine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine	Number
		singular and plural	
للبي	<u>پہلے</u>	<u>بیلی</u>	first
دوسرا	دوم م	دوسرى	second
تيرا	تيرے	تيرى	third
چوتھا	ë q	چو تھی	fourth
پانچواں	پانچویں	پانچویں	fifth
چھنگا	پھر نے	چھتی	sixth
ساتواں	ساتویں	ساتویں	seventh
آ تھواں	آ تھویں	آتھویں	eighth
نوال	نویں	نویں	ninth
دسوال	د سویں	د سوی	tenth

From number 7 onward you can see a pattern of attaching the suffixes ("vaan," "ven," "vin")  $e_{ij}$ ,  $e_$ 

# 3.1-3.4 Reading and Translation Drill

## 3.1-3.4 Substitutions

Substitute the adjectives and/or nouns in brackets with the Urdu equivalents of the English

words indicated below:

على بهت (ابتحا) لركا ب-\_1

handsome

intelligent

tall

famous

good

# intelligent

tall

young (small)

٣- وه چزی بهت (مزيدار) بي -

good

yellow

expensive

cheap

yellow

good

expensive

cheap

یہ قالین (سفید) ہے۔ \_0

black

round

expensive

beautiful

(شیلا) (پیلی لڑکی) ہے۔ -1

- second boy He
- third doctor Ali
- fourth student I

sixth student Michelle

inside above

fifth

small

round

### 3.5 Pronunciation Drill: Perso-Arabic Sounds I

Column 3	Column 2	Column 1
مقبره	عادت	ثابيت
ئر فی	عجر ت	أكثر
غضب	عيتك	اخبار
بغداد	عدالت	ثراب
بغل	عام	خزاند
شغل	ب ج	خاموش
ىتراغ	غم	<i>,</i> ;
<u>ژوليده</u>	غازى	خالى
م شكال	غمته	فر گوش
اژدحا	غنيمت	خريوزه
الأدر	غوري	<i>جَد م</i> ت
طرن	غزل	خدا
طريقه	فادغ	بنخار

50

A M DUAKENSICK SOS

٢

(Conversation) گفتگو 3.6

### 3.7 Conversation Practice

Tourist: This store is very good.

Guide: Yes, but  $(\sqrt{2})$  this is an expensive store. The fifth store over there is cheap.

Tourist: Is it clean?

Guide: Yes, it is clean and very big.

Tourist: What are those big yellow things?

Guide:	These are delicious oranges and those are delicious red apples.
Tourist:	Are the oranges expensive?
Guide:	No, they are very cheap. The apples are also cheap. This bread is also
	delicious.
Tourist:	Who is that beautiful girl in the picture?
Guide:	That is Madhuri Dixit. She is an actress. She is very famous.
Tourist:	Is she Punjabi?
Guide:	No, she is from Maharashtra.
Tourist:	Maharashtra is in India. Mumbai and Bollywood are in Maharashtra. There are
	many beautiful actresses and handsome actors in Bollywood.
Guide:	Yes. The actor in that picture over there is Shahrukh Khan. He too is very
	famous.

3.8 Songs

ا) يہ دُنيا گول ہے اوپر سے خول ہے اندر تو ديکھو پيارے بالکل يولم يول ہے

۲) يه دِل ديوانه بے دِل تو ديوانه بے ديوانه دِل بے يه آه با با۔۔۔دِل ديوانه

## Glossary for Songs

round, circular; a circle (m) = گول	dear one (term of address) بارے
eover; case; sheath (m) خول	hollow = پولم پول
see (informal imperative) = ديکھو	

## 3.9 Vocabulary

above	الا پ
absolutely, completely	بالثكل
actor	اداكار
actress	اداكاره
apple (m)	سيب
banana (m)	كيلا
big	12
black	ЛК
blue	Цţ
book (f)	كتاب
bread (f)	روڨي
carpet (f)	قاليين
cheap; inexpensive	ستنا
clean	صاف
cow (f)	2 الا
delicious	مز بدار
dog (m)	er

eighth eleven	انتھارہ آتھواں <sup>ح</sup> یارہ
expensive	Bir
fifteen	يثدره
fifth	پانچواں
first	للبر
fourteen	0) <i>9</i> .
fourth	چوتھا
fruit (m)	چل
hospital (m)	<i>مپ</i> تال
inside	اندر
job/work (m)	نوكرى
mad, ecstatic; crazy	ديدانہ
Maharashtra (m)	بهاراششره
night (f)	رات 
nineteen	أليس
ninth	نوال
orange (m)	(ا(سفترہ)
picture/photograph (f)	تصوير
room (m)	كمره
round, circular; a circle (m)	گول

second; another	دة مرا
seventeen	ستره
seventh	سانواں ذکان/دوکان
shop/store	ذكان/دوكان
shopkeeper/store owner	ذكان والارووكان والا
sixteen	سولہ
sixth	يتحوقا
small	چھو ٹا
table (f)	75
tall	Ł
tea (f)	ي ک
tenth	چائے دسوال
third	تيسرا
thirteen	تيره
twelve	ياره
twenty	U#
white	صقيد
wife (f)	صقید بوی
world (f)	ۇنيا
yellow	ۇىيا چىلا

#### **Chapter 4**

#### 4.1 Possessive Adjectives

The postposition  $\mathcal{C}$  (and its forms  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{L}$ ) are used to form possessive adjectives in Urdu.  $\mathcal{C}$  in Urdu functions roughly like "of" or "apostrophe s, 's" in English. Like a postposition, it follows a noun or a pronoun. When it follows a noun or a pronoun, the  $\mathcal{C}$  and its preceding noun/pronoun is transformed into a possessive adjective or an adjectival phrase:

آپ + کا گھر

[noun] [possessive postposition] [pronoun]

#### (your house)

In the above sentence  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{L}}$  is a possessive adjective. In Urdu, possessive adjectives are marked adjectives that reflect the gender and number of the item(s) possessed. The gender and number of the possessor has no impact upon the possessive adjectives. Possessive adjectives, like their attributive counterparts, precede the nouns they modify. Thus, if the possessed object is *masculine singular*, the relevant noun/pronoun is followed by the possessive particle  $\mathcal{L}$ :

In the above examples, because  $\nabla \mathcal{X}$  the possessed object is masculine singular, it is preceded by the masculine singular form of the possessive particle  $\mathcal{V}$ . If the possessed object is masculine *plural*, then it is preceded by the masculine plural form of the possessive particle  $\angle$ :

Your shoes	آپ کے بوتے
Ali's shoes	علی کے جوتے
Radha's shoes	رادھا کے جوتے

If the possessed object is *feminine singular or plural*, then the possessive particle  $\mathcal{S}$  precedes it:

Your thing	آپ کی چیز
Ali's thing	علی کی چیز
Radha's thing	رادها کی چیز

Your things	آپ کی چزیں
Ali's things	علی کی چزیں
Radha's things	رادها کی چزیں

When  $\mathcal{J}$ ,  $\mathcal{J}$ ,  $\mathcal{J}$  follow pronouns, they have special forms. Below is a list of these special forms. Only the pronoun  $\tilde{l}$  does not change its form with the possessive particle.

ير ا	=	б	+	یں
يرى	-	ک	+	یں
LA	-	٤	+	یں
تيرا	-	б	+	تو
تيرى	-	ى	+	تو
	-	٢	+	تۆ
		57		

تمهادا	-	б	+	7
تتهارى	-	ى	+	5
تمهارے	9	٤	+	7
آپ کا	-	б	+	Ţ
آپک	-	ى	+	آپ
آپ کے	-	٤	+	آپ
اس کا	=	б	+	(singular) 09
اس ک	ce.	ک	+	(singular) 09
اں کے	*	٤	+	(singular) 09
أن كا	=	б	+	(plural) 09
ان کی	*	ک	+	(plural) 09
أن كے		٤	+	(plural) 09
لارما	0.040	б	+	(singular) -
المك	.=	ک	+	ہے(singular)
とい		٤	+	(singular) -
انکا	-	б	+	(plural) <del>;</del>
ان ک		ک	+	(plural) 🛫
ان کے	=	L	+	(plural) <sub>⊄</sub>
1.ha		б	+	r
הארט	-	ى	+	r.
<i>مارے</i>	a.	٢	+	A

## 4.1 Substitutions

Replace the words in brackets with the Urdu equivalents of the English listed below:

ا۔ یہ (میرا) دوست ہے۔ his her our your (formal) their my your (informal) its his her (أى كا) مكان برا بmy our your (least formal) their her ٣- يہاں (شيلاك) جوتے ہیںmy

his

Ravi's

Stephanie and Lisa's

your

Amitabh Bacchan's

Madhuri Dixit's

our

their

her

4.1 Reading and Translation Drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate possessive adjectives and then translate into English.

(my)	گھر یہاں سے دور ہے۔		-
(our)	چزیں بہت خوبصورت ہیں۔		_*
(his)	جو تا جاپانی ہے۔		۳.
(their)	ٹو پیاں ہندوستانی ہیں۔		-~
(our)	مکان پہاں سے دور شہیں۔		_0
(her)	کتابیں بہت مہتگی ہیں۔		_4
(your, least formal)	دِل ہندوستانی ہے؟	كيا،	-4
(my)	_دِل امریکی ہے۔	جی شہیں۔ _	_^
(your, most formal)	دفتر یہاں سے بہت نزد یک ہے۔		_9
(your, informal)	دوست دس سال سے بوسٹن میں ہیں۔		-1+

### 4.2 Asking and Telling Age

<u>Note</u>: Many people in South Asia, as in many Western nations, do not consider direct questions about their age to be polite or in good taste. Although it is crucial to learn how to make such inquiries, students should be aware that this kind of question should not be undertaken casually. Generally speaking, asking the age of young children or people younger than one's self is considered acceptable. For older persons or people whom one does not know well this may become a sensitive issue.

#### Asking Age

2

The sentence pattern used to ask a person's age is as follows:

4	3
۶۴	٢

Possessive adjective declined to modify a feminine noun.

1

The possessive adjective is declined in the feminine form because  $\checkmark$  the noun for "age" is feminine.

What is your age?

What is his/her age?

Alternatively, one may ask age by using a variation of the expression کنتے سال 'how many years." In this case, the word سال is followed by appropriate form of کا، کے، کی agreeing with the subject. For example:

آپ کتے مال کے بیں؟

How old are you? [lit. how many years are you?]

وہ کتنے سال کار کی ہے؟

How old is he/she? [lit. how many years is he/she?]

#### Telling Age

The usual pattern for telling one's age is as follows:

4

- 3

1

verb agreeing with

5.2.6

3

# of years

and UL

2

subject

subject

agreeing with subject

I (masculine singular) am 20 years old.

Sheila is 10 years old.

ہم پندرہ سال کے ہیں۔

We (masculine plural) are 15 years old.

One may also tell age by using the noun  $\int_{a}^{b}$  with the appropriate possessive adjective, but this is

less common.

میری غمر بیں سال ہے۔

I am 20 years old [lit. my age is 20]

Sheila is 10 years old [lit. Sheila's age is 10]

## 4.3 Cardinal Numbers 21-30

۲۱ اکتیں بانيس ٢٢ می*ی*س ۲٣ يوبي چ ٢٢ پېچتى 10 چھتیں 14 ۲۷ ستانیس ۲۸ اتھائیس ۲۹ أنتيس تين ٣.

4.2 - 4.3 Reading and Translation Drill

ماری کلاس کی لڑکماں ستائیس سال کی ہی۔ سب لڑکے اتھائیس سال کے ہیں۔ ٣- أن كابرا بحائى أنتيس سال كاب-مرأن كى بدى بين تي سال كى ب-کیا، تو بھی سولہ سال کی ہے؟ نہیں، نہیں۔ میں اتھارہ سال کی ہوں۔

Translate into Urdu:

- Is his older sister twenty-one years old?
- 2. My sister and I are twenty-five years old.
- 3. How old are you?
- These are twenty-eight delicious oranges.
- 5. Are these thirty red apples?

#### 4.4 Order in a Noun Phrase

Thus far we have learned that nouns may be preceded by various elements including possessive adjectives (التحالي), attributive adjectives (التحالي), demonstratives (ميرا، آپ کا، رانککا), and numbers. They may sometimes be preceded by interrogatives as well. Examples of some interrogatives that frequently precede a noun include کون (who, which), کون (which one), کترا, کون (who, which), کون) (which one), کرد (how much, how many), and کرد (what kind or sort of, how). (Note: کرد) are marked interrogatives; the "*aa*" ending, as in the case of marked adjectives, may change to "*ii*" or "*e*" depending on the gender and number of the noun that follows.) When a noun is preceded by two or more of these elements, the following order should be observed: Noun

Attributive Adjective

Demonstrative,

Interrogative,

Number

Examples:

ميرا وه موشيار لركا يمال ب-

That clever son of mine (lit. my that clever son) is here.

Nargis' two younger sisters are pretty.

(Note: is used here as a predicate adjective and hence follows the noun.)

### 4.4 Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Urdu:

- 1. Which beautiful daughter of his is an actress? (use Los for which)
- 2. Nilufer's second blue carpet is from Iran.

3. Those two big black dogs of yours are no good!

4. These seven-year-old yellow photographs, on the table, are mine.

5. All of Reshma's elder sisters are very tall.

6. How many of Raj's crazy friends are in America?

4.5 Pronunciation Drills - Nasals

Column 4	Column 3	Column 2	Column 1
بعنكرا	زنگ	لاؤل	ستک
سِنْگھاڑا	أمتك	جهال	رنگ
گھنگر و	أنك	وبان	بهتك

مينكا	انكريز	يہاں	ت ک
تحتذك	فرتک	זעט	ڈھنگ
منگنی	تارىكى	جوں	نتك
سانس	تانگہ	سول	پاتک
جنگ	جھانسہ	وول	گاۆل
شكر	پھانس	چھادى	پا <i>ڌل</i>

Perso-Arabic Sounds II

Column 3	Column 2	Column 1
طشت	فابخر	فمير
طيفلى	فخر	اخر
اطفال	قاضی	صاحب
غالِب	تخلم	حلامه
إقبال	فتبيله	صدد
ذو <b>ق</b>	تافلہ	حتمير
تر	تسمت	مضمون
فر اق	تالين	ۇخىو
تمار	تا تون	طالِب
تق	قيامت	طالياں
مقصد	مقام	ظلم
مقتل	تقتل	ظالم
طوطا	ضمانت	ظفر

## 4.7 Conversation Practice

Steve: Hello. I am Steve. I am from New York. Where is Sheila?

Seema: Sheila is not at home. I am her sister Seema and this is our little brother Babu.

Who is he?

- Steve: This is my friend Amar. This is his cat Dimple.
- Seema: Hello, Amar. Dimple is very beautiful. How old is she?
- Amar: She is five years old and she is very smart.
- Babu: I also am five years old and I am very smart!
- Seema: Where is Dimple from? She is not an Indian cat!
- Steve: She is from Afghanistan. She is an Afghani cat!
- Seema: Amar, are you from Afghanistan?
- Amar: No, no, I am from Bangladesh.
- Babu: Is Bangladesh far from India?
- Amar: Bangladesh is very close to India. It is a very beautiful country.
- Babu: My sisters and I are from India. There are no good cats in India.
- Steve: Well! We've got to run. We'll meet again. Goodbye!
- Seema: Yes, we will meet again. Goodbye!
- Babu: Goodbye, little Dimple!

#### 4.8 Songs

۳) عمر تیری سولہ نخرے تیرے سترہ!۔۔۔ خطرہ! خطرہ! خطرہ! -۔۔۔ سترہ نخروں والی تیرا ہر نخرہ ہے ۔۔۔ خطرہ!

Glossary for Songs

تستی = existence (f) = eye (m) = kohl, collyrium (m) = curl, tress (f) = hem of sari, veil, or shawl (m) و هر کن = heartbeat (f) = flame, spark (m) = dew, dew drop (f) مدم = companion, bosom friend (m/f) = sta

## 4.9 Vocabulary

age (f)	×
all	سب
brother (m)	بھائی
but/however	مگرا لیکن
car (f)	گاڑی
cat (f)	يتى
country (m)	مُلك

danger (m)	خطره
daughter (f)	بینی
elderly (adj.); elderly person	أوزحا
friend (m/f)	روست
ghazal (love poem) (f)	غزل
how much, how many?	کِتنا، کَتِنی، کِتنے
life (f)	کِتا، کَتِنی، کِتنے زِندگ
moment (m)	یل
more, additional (adj.)	اور
old (thing)	لي انا
only	م ف
pen (m/f)	تخلم
poet (m)	شاير
sister (f)	U.T.
sometimes	حبحى
story (f)	كياني
thirty	تپس
this much	EI
twenty-one	اكتيس
twenty-two	بانيس
twenty-three	تييس
twenty-four	سیس چوبیں
71	

twenty-five مہیر چھتیں ستائیں انٹیں انٹیں، کیے جوان جوانی twenty-six twenty-seven twenty-eight twenty-nine what sort of, what kind of, how young (adj.), youth (m/f) youth, youthfulness (f)

#### Chapter 5

#### 5.1 The Present Habitual Tense

#### Verb Infinitives

All verb infinitives in Urdu end in C. For example:

to read/study	پڑھنا
to go	جانا
to do	15

#### Urdu Verbal Stems

In order to derive the stem (sometimes also called the root) from the infinitive, the ending t is dropped. The stem of  $t_{1}$  is thus  $a_{2}$ , that for  $t_{2}$  is and that for  $t_{2}$  is f.

### The Present Habitual Tense

To conjugate verbs that indicate actions that occur in the present or are habitual or frequent, the suffixes  $\vec{J}$ ,  $\vec{J}$ , are added to the verbal stem to create the present participle. The choice of suffix is determined by the number and gender of the subject of the sentence. Thus  $\vec{J}$  is the suffix for the verbal stem if the subject is masculine singular,  $\vec{J}$  if it is masculine plural, and  $\vec{J}$  for both feminine singular and plural subjects. To complete the tense the appropriate present tense of the  $\vec{J}$  verb also needs to be added. For example, the stem of the Urdu verb "to read or study" is  $\vec{J}$ . In order to say "he is reading or studying" we add the suffix  $\vec{J}$  to the verb stem (since the subject is masculine singular) to get  $\vec{J}$  which grammatically is the masculine

present participle. To this is added  $\leftarrow$  the present tense of the verb  $i \neq 7$  corresponding to the subject "he." The result is the sentence  $\leftarrow$   $i \neq 2$   $i \neq 3$  which means "He reads/studies." Note: The present habitual tense does not denote that the subject is currently engaged in a particular act or process (e.g. he/she is reading). For this situation there is a separate tense, the present continuous, which will be introduced in Chapter 7. The following table illustrates the conjugational forms of the verb  $i \neq 4$  in the present habitual:

Verbal Infinitive: لإهنا

Stem: 0%

English

Urdu Feminine

-L	) rel	ير حق	2
	-4	حتى	23
	-97	ه ه ت	57
-6	ים מ	P 2	ĩţ
		عتى	1 09

Singular	
I study.	میں پڑھتا ہوں۔
You (least formal) study.	تو پڑھتا ہے۔
You (informal) study.	تم پڑھتے ہو۔
You (formal) study.	آپ پڑھتے ہیں۔
He/she studies.	وہ پڑھتا ہے۔
Plural	
We study.	- Ut 2 1/ Fi

Urdu Masculine

ין גיש יוט-	We study.	ام پڑھتے ہیں۔
تم پڑھتی ہو۔	You (informal) study.	تم پڑھتے ہو۔
آپ پڑھتی ہیں۔	You (formal) study.	آپ پڑھتے ہیں۔
وہ پڑھتی ہیں۔	They study.	وه پر مصف بیل-

Note: In Urdu, the verb 1, "to go" does not need a postposition "to."

ہم کالی جاتے ہیں۔

We go to college.

Do you go to the movies?

### 5.2 The Present Habitual Negative

In negative sentences, the negative particle تتبير is placed right before the conjugated present

habitual verb and the auxiliary (the form of  $t_{\mathcal{H}}$  ) is dropped unless the tone is emphatic:

I don't study.

I don't study (emphatic).

For still more emphasis, the negative particle may also be placed after the verb.

I do not study at all.

In case the subject is feminine plural, and the negative particle precedes the verb, then the

feminine present participle is nasalized:

She does not study.

I do not study.

They (feminine) do not study.

ہم شیں پڑھتیں۔

## We (feminine) do not study.

The feminine plural present participle loses this nasalization when the negative particle

ہم پڑھتی نہیں۔ ,follows it, e.g.,

Here is a list of common Urdu verbs that you should memorize:

to eat	كھانا
to drink	پينا
to stay or to live	رينا
to go	جانا
to come	ίT
to do	كرنا
to work	کرنا کام کرنا
to write	ليكحنا
to sing	:5
to dance	ئاچئا
to play	كهيلنا
to understand	فتبجسنا
to give	وينا
to bring	tı
to take	لين
to see	د یکھنا

## 5.1-5.2 Conjugation Drill

Conjugate the following verbs in the present habitual tense (assume that the subject is

masculine):

كمانا کھیلنا in, يرنا يل تو تم (singular) 09 (plural) 09 F

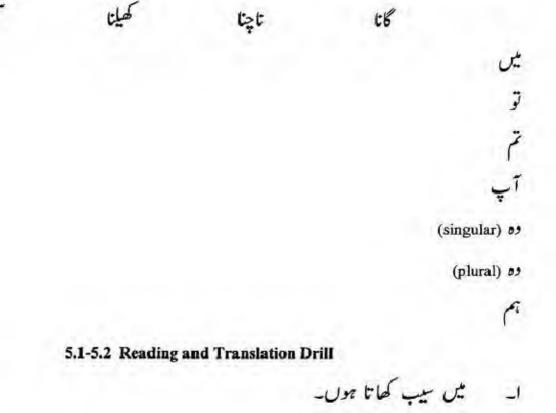
Conjugate the following verbs in the present habitual tense (assume that the subject is feminine).

لكحنا کام کرنا tī جانا U. 7 (singular) 09 (plural) of 6

Conjugate the following verbs in the negative present habitual tense (assume that the subject is

feminine).

جحنا



# 5.3 Times of the Day, Days of the Week, and Other Time Phrases

Times of the Day

morning (f)	É
afternoon (f)	دوجيكر
evening (f)	شام
night (f)	رات
day, daytime (m)	دِلن
Days of the W	leek
Sunday (m)	إتوار
Monday (m)	15
Tuesday (m)	متكل

80

Wednesday (m)	بدھ
Thursday (f)	تح <b>عرات</b>
Friday (m)	22
Saturday (m)	بفت
Other Expressions of Time	
today (m)	75
tomorrow (m)	کل
yesterday (m)	کل
day after tomorrow (m)	پرسول
day before yesterday (m)	پر سول
every	л
every day (m)	ת נכני ת גט
every week (m)	ہر ہفتہ
every month (m)	بر مید
every year (m)	بر مال
sometimes	بر سال تبھی تبھی آج کل
nowadays	آج کل

# 5.4 The Particle with Temporal Words and Phrases

The particle  $\int$  has many uses in Urdu. We will discuss these uses in great detail later. Suffice to say here that certain time expressions are marked by (or followed by)  $\int$ . All times of the day, with the exception of  $\hat{\mathcal{E}}$  (morning), are marked by  $\hat{\mathcal{I}}$ . Similarly all the days of the week are also marked by  $\hat{\mathcal{I}}$ .  $\hat{\mathcal{I}}$  after these expressions may be variously translated as "on," "in," or

"during." However, none of the other expressions of time introduced above (such as آج، کل، العنان use ) use ).

I go to school in the day and work in the evening.

He plays golf in the morning but studies at night.

The girls do not go to school on Sunday.

I am very busy these days.

My family goes to Pakistan every year.

Note: The short "a" vowel at the end of the words for Friday and Saturday, جفتہ and جمعہ, changes to "e" when marked by . For explanation, refer to the discussion on the oblique case

of nouns in Chapter 6.

4

#### 5.5 Review of Urdu Sentence Structure

The normal word order in an Urdu sentence is:

1

3 2

Any change in this order usually implies that the element placed out of normal sequence in the sentence is meant to be emphasized:

ہر روز میں گھر میں پڑھتا ہوں۔

The temporal phrase  $j_{22}$ , "every day," is emphasized in this sentence by being positioned at the beginning of the sentence before the subject.

#### 5.3 - 5.5 Substitution and Response Drill

Substitute the phrases in brackets with the Urdu equivalents of the English words indicated

below:

یں (اتوار کو) کام نہیں کرتا۔

on Monday

on Saturday

in the morning

in the evening

ہم (تبھی تبھی ) سنیما جاتے ہیں۔

every night

on Friday

on Thursday

every year

٣- ميں (آج) پڑھتا ہوں۔

on Tuesday

every week

on Wednesday

in the afternoon

کیا، تم لوگ (پیر کو) مصروف ہو؟ \_1"

on Thursday

every month

tomorrow

today in the evening

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the present habitual tense:

	(go)_	میں ہر روز دفتر	_1
	(work)	ہارے دوست بہت	_r
	(studies)	وہ لڑکی لائبر ریک میں	_٣
	(come)	میں اور اُس کا بھائی شام کو_	_r^
	(live)	میرے بھائی لندن میں	_0
	(dance)	ہر روز شام کو وہ لڑ کیاں_	_4
	? (understand)	کیا، تم أردو	_4
(read and write) _	اور	جی تہیں۔ میں اُردو	_^
	(play)	ہم لوگ سب فلیال	_9
	?(eat)	كيا، آپ ہر شخ كچل	-1+
	(sing) _	مدونا بهت البھا	_11
	(come)	لڑ کیاں ٹھر ات کو شہیں	_11
	(give)	کویتا اور نیلو مٹھائی تہیں	_11-

میرا دوست روی \_\_\_\_\_ (is) ۔ روی ایم۔ آئی۔ ٹی میں \_\_\_\_ (studies)۔ روی بہت ایتھا اسٹوڈنٹ \_\_\_\_\_ (is)۔ روی کے دو بھائی رمیش اور راج \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the following questions both orally and in writing:

# 5.6 The Verb Lig with Nouns and Verbs

In this section we will be discussing two uses of the verb Ly, to want, to desire.

1. Ly with a noun:

The noun becomes the object of  $l_{1}l_{2}$ , that is the object which is desired:

verb

inanimate object of verb

subject

# I want fruit.

2. پايتا with a verbal infinitive:

The verbal infinitive in this construction becomes the object of :

چاہتا ہوں		كمانا	یں
verb	verba	al infinitive	subject
	I w	ant to eat.	
Note that in such a cons	truction only the verb	is conjugated. The	verbal infinitive remains
unchanged. To form the	negative, the particle	may be inserted bef	ore the verbal infinitive
with the auxiliary of <b>t</b>	the ing optionally retain	ined or not for emphasis:	
چاہتا (ہوں)	كھانا	نہیں	یں
verb	verbal infinitive	negative	subject
For additional emphasis, the negative may be placed between the verbal infinitive and verb:			
چاہتا (ہوں)	نہیں	كمعانا	یں
verb	negative	verbal infinitive	subject
For even more emphasis	, the negative can be n	noved to the end of the ser	ntence:
نہیں!	چ <i>ا</i> بتا	كحانا	یں
negative	verb	verbal infinitive	subject
5.6 Substitutions and Translations			

Replace the phrases within brackets in the following sentences with the Urdu equivalents of the English phrases listed below.

يں (بيں آم) چاہتا ہوں۔

<sup>21</sup> fruits

22 apples

23 houses

24 things

want 25 pens they want 26 oranges you (formal) wants 27 hats she

want 28 mangoes Raj and Nargis

(بم) (ناچنا چاہتے ہیں۔)

want to sing I

want to play you (least formal)

want to drink you (informal)

wants to understand Rob

read	newspaper	
give	that thing	
drink	water	

take 30 books

(وه)(تاج محل)( ديکھنا جا ہتی ہے)۔

\_0

wants to go New York Steve do not want to go cinema Steve and Amber

want to stay at home people

Translate into Urdu:

- 1. We want to sing every evening.
- 2. My friend and Rishi want to eat Indian food in an Indian restaurant.
- 3. He wants to come to America; he does not want to live in India!
- 4. She wants to understand Chinese not Russian.
- 5. All of them want to read the newspaper in the morning.
- 6. I want to go to the movies but Sheila wants to stay in the house.
- Do you (formal) want to work in the White House? No, I don't want to work in the White House. I want to eat dinner and dance in the White House.

Column 3	Column 2	Column 1
دوڑنا	چھوڑ نا	12 12
پھوڑنا	توژنا	کرا گڑا
جھاڑ	يهاژ	گرا گڑا
والأ	بال	17. 17.
واڑا	ياڑھ	گھورا گھوڑا
كازا	جاڑہ	مورا موڑا
بتكلوا	بتكورا	یری گھڑی
بگر ی	<u>پ</u> ری	بری بیر حی
کھوڑی	تگوڑ ی	مورنا موژنا

#### 5.7 Pronunciation Drill: Retroflexes

Repeat the following sentences to practice retroflexive sounds:

(Conversation) گفتگو 5.8

كيا، يه لكهنو إسميش كا تكث كمرب؟ : 13; :5% جى بار- آب كمال جانا جامى بير؟ میں بنارس جاتا جامتی ہوں۔ فرسٹ کلاس کا کرایہ کیا ہے؟ : 13; : 3/2: فرست کلاس کا کرایہ دو سو روپے ہے۔ آپ کہاں رہتی ہیں؟ میں امریکہ میں رہتی ہوں گر میں ہر سال ہندوستان آتی ہوں۔ یہاں میرا : 3; خاندان رہتا ہے۔ ایتھا، فرسٹ کلاس کا کرایہ بہت زیادہ ہے۔ سیکنڈ کلاس کا كرابه كيا ي؟ میڈم ہے بہت مشکل ہے۔ سیکنڈ کلاس میں جگہ نہیں ہے۔ : 5/6 (-チャブひり) تركس! تم يهان؟ تم كما كرما جابتي مو؟ :21 : 3; راج، میں بنارس جانا جامتی ہوں۔ وہاں کے مندر دیکھنا جامتی ہوں اور ساڑیاں خريدنا جائتي ہوں۔ میں بھی بتارس دیکھنا جاہتا ہوں اور میں بنارس میں یان بھی کھانا جاہتا :21 ہوں۔ یہ ٹرین .کے دو عکت ہیں۔

#### 5.9 Conversation Practice

Have a conversation with your partner about his/her activities in the morning, afternoon, evening, and night. You should have at least 6-8 questions for your partner and vice versa. All answers should be in complete sentences. Your conversations should incorporate as many of the following vocabulary words as possible:

صبح، ووپهر، شام، رات، کھانا، پینا، دیکھنا، رہنا، ناچنا، گانا، جاہنا، خاندان، سبھنا، آج کل، ہفتہ، اتوار، تبھی کبھی، کام کرنا، آنا، جانا۔

Be creative and feel free to bring in other vocabulary that we have encountered so far.

5.10 Songs

ا) دِل ہے کہ مانتا نہیں مشکل بڑی ہے رسم محبّت یہ جانتا ہی نہیں۔۔۔۔

	Glossary for Songs	
rites, customs of love رسم محبّت	tears (m) = آنسو	
t = memory, rememberance (f)	breath (f) = سانس	
(*) = storm (m)		

storm (m) = طوفان

5.11 Vocabulary

afternoon (f)	16.32
Arabic (f)	عربی
to bring	เป
busy	مفرموف
to buy	خريدنا
chess (f)	شطرنخ
to come	ιT
to be convinced, to listen, to	56

obey

crazy, mad, insane	پاگل
to dance	ئاچنا
day (m)	دِن
day before yesterday; day after	پر سول
tomorrow	
definitely, sure	خر ور
difficult	تشكل
to do	كرنا
to drink	بينا
to eat	کھاتا
evening (f)	17
every	л
every day (m)	הגנטי ה נפנ
every month (m)	بردن، برروز بر میبید
every week (m)	بر بفت
every year (m)	ہر ہفتہ ہر سال آنگھ
eye (f)	-
family (m)	پرِوار، خاندان رِکرامیہ
fare, rent (m)	<u>ک</u> را <del>به</del>
food (m)	کھانا
Friday (m)	se.
to give	د ينا
92	

to go	جاتا
happy	نۇش
hobby/hobbies (m)	شوق
hundred	سو
to know	جانئا
less	F
to live or to stay	رينا
a lot, very much	نیادہ
love	پیار (m)/ مُحَبّت (f)/ عِشْق (m) پیار کرنا، مُحَبّت کرنا
to love	پیار کرنا، مُحبّت کرنا
mango (m)	٢٦
memory, remembrance (f)	ياد
Monday (m)	13
morning (f)	É
newspaper (m)	اخبار
now	اب
occasionally, now and then	مستبهى سمبهى
people, folk (m)	لوگ
place/vacancy (f)	جگہ
to play	كهيلنا
rupee (Indian/Pakistani	روپيه
currency) (m)	

Saturday (m); week (m)	ہفتہ
to see	د یکھنا
to sing	55
to study/ to read	پڑھنا
Sunday (m)	إتوار
sweets (f)	ميطاتى
to take	لين
temple (m)	متدد
that, which, who (relative	کہ
pronoun and conjunction)	
these days / nowadays	آ ج کل
Thursday (f)	آجکل تحرات
today (m)	75
tomorrow/yesterday (m)	كل
Tuesday (m)	متكل
to understand	فستجصنا
water (m)	يانى
Wednesday (m)	يدھ
when (relative pronoun)	چپ
why?	<i>کیو</i> ں
wine/alcohol (f)	شراب کام کرنا

to write

yogurt drink (f)

لِکھنا لتی

95

## Chapter 6

#### 6.1 Postpositions

Unlike English, Urdu does not have prepositions. Instead it has postpositions: that is, the prepositional counterpart in Urdu comes after the noun or pronoun it modifies. Some postpositions consist of only one word and are called simple postpositions while others consist of more than one word, hence they are called compound postpositions.

Common simple postpositions include:

at, in	یں
on	4
from, by, with, since	E
to	کو
until, up to	تک

Compound postpositions are usually formed with the particle  $\leq$  or occasionally with  $\leq$ . Some important examples include:

near	ح پاک
concerning, regarding, about	کے بارے میں
far from	ے دور
with	あしと
before	لي ح بل ح بل
after	کے بعد

on top of	کے اور
under	ž Z
across, in front of	کے سامنے
behind	5 L
near, close to	کے نزدیک ا کے قریب
beyond, in front of, ahead of	LĨL
inside	کے اندر
because of	کی وجہ سے

Note: Pronouns that precede compound postpositions beginning with  $\leq$  assume their possessive forms as discussed in Chapter 4. Thus, the pronoun مثل before مح ساتھ becomes کے ساتھ hence کی وجہ سے Similarly, the pronoun مثل before کی وجہ سے becomes.

## 6.2 The Oblique Case - Oblique Forms of Nouns

Whenever a noun or a pronoun is followed by a postposition, the noun/pronoun (and its modifying adjective) goes into the oblique case. Without the postposition, the noun/pronoun and adjectives modifying them are said to be in the nominative case. Some nouns/pronouns reflect the oblique case by slight changes in their forms while others remain unchanged. Exception: Some pronouns followed by a compound postposition use their possessive forms and not oblique forms. See section 6.6 below.

#### **Oblique Forms of Nouns**

#### Masculine Singular Nouns

When a postposition is used after a marked masculine singular noun which ends in final "alif"

1, the "alif" is changed to "baRii ye"  $\leq$ . If the noun ends in a "choTii he," the "choTii he" is either changed to "baRii ye" or retained and pronounced as "e." For example:

Nominative:the boy $\mathcal{C}$ Oblique:on the boy $\mathcal{L}$ Nominative:child $\mathcal{Z}$ Oblique:on the child $\mathcal{L}$ 

Unmarked masculine singular nouns (i.e., those that do not end with final "alif") do not change their form in the oblique. Example:

وفر Nominative: office

وفتر ميں Oblique: in the office وفتر ميں

## Masculine Plural Nouns

When masculine plural nouns go into the oblique, the suffix "on"  $\mathcal{O}$  is attached to them. Marked masculine nouns which end with "baRii ye"  $\bigtriangleup$  in the nominative plural, drop this ending before taking the "on"  $\mathcal{O}$  suffix. Examples:

# a) Marked

Nominative:	boys	EY
Oblique:	with the boys	لڑکوں کے ساتھ
b) Linmarked		

Nominative: offices رفتر Oblique: in the offices رفترول میں

## Feminine Singular Nouns

When feminine singular nouns are followed by a postposition, their form remains unchanged

regardless of whether they are marked or unmarked. Examples:

4%

# a) Marked

Nominative:	girl	لڑکی
Oblique:	from the girl	لڑی ہے
b) Unmarked		
Nominative:	table	*
Oblique:	on the table	1%

# Feminine Plural Nouns

ول "All feminine plural nouns take the "on" ول ending in their oblique forms. Note: The "on" ول suffix is added to the singular form of feminine nouns.

# a) Marked

Monsternations	adala	لركيان
Nominative:	girls	041

from the girls Oblique:

b) Unmarked

Nominative:	tables	ميزي	
Oblique.	on the tables	110%	

# Summary of Oblique Form Endings for Nouns

Type of noun Singular Oblique Ending		Plural Oblique Ending
Marked masculine	"e" ∠	ول "on"
Unmarked masculine	same as nominative	وں "on"
Marked feminine	same as nominative	"on" ()
Unmarked feminine	same as nominative	ول "on"

## 6.2 Drill Exercise

Give the nominative plural, singular oblique, and plural oblique forms of the following nouns:

+ا_ ملک	74 -4	سم- ٹوپی	ا۔ کیلا
اا۔ دوست	۸_ قالين	٦٢ -٥	۲_سیب
۲ا۔ پھل	۹_ گاڑی	۲_ بھائی	سا_مہینہ
19۔ تصویر	۲۲ کتاب	t310	۳۱_ مکان
۲۰ - دکان	٨١ كماني	۲۱- بوژها	۳۱۔ روٹی

6.3 Oblique Forms of Demonstratives

#### Nominative Singular

**Oblique Singular** 

this boy

that boy

6 4 00

Nominative Plural

these girls

those girls

on this boy

on that boy

**Oblique** Plural

with these girls

with those girls

## 6.4 Oblique Forms of Adjectives

#### Marked Adjectives

a) Singular Masculine: These adjectives change the word final "alif" | ending to "baRii ye"

∠ in the oblique.

Nominative

#### Oblique

with this good boy

ای ایھ لاکے کے ساتھ

برايھا لڑکا

this good boy

in that big house

that big house

وه يدا كم

اس بوے گھر میں

b) Plural Masculine, Singular Feminine, Plural Feminine:

These adjectives do not change their form in the oblique.

Plural Masculine: اپتھے لڑکوں کے ساتھ Singular Feminine: اچھی لڑکی کے ساتھ Plural Feminine: اچھی لڑکیوں کے ساتھ

with the good boys with the good girl with the good girls

# **Unmarked** Adjectives

These adjectives do not change their form in the oblique, regardless of number or gender. Study

the following examples with the adjective يوشار (intelligent).

Masculine Singular Nominativeہوشیار لڑکاMasculine Singular Obliqueجوشیار لڑکے سےMasculine Plural Nominativeجوشیار لڑکے سےMasculine Plural Obliqueجوشیار لڑکوں سےFeminine Singular Nominativeہوشیار لڑکی

Feminine Singular Oblique

Feminine Plural Nominative

Feminine Plural Oblique

# 6.5 Oblique Forms of Pronouns

When certain pronouns are followed by postpositions, they assume a special form. Here is a list of the pronouns in their nominative and oblique forms.

Singular

Nominative	Oblique
یں	B.
3	B.
7	7
آپ	آپ
69	أس
2	J

Plui	ral
Nominative	Oblique
<i>(r</i>	r
تم	7
آپ	آپ
63	أن

~

ہوشیار لڑکی سے ہوشیار لڑ کیاں ہوشیار لڑ کیوں سے

10

# 6.6 Note on 5 . 2 . K

the boy's name	لا کے کا نام
the boys' names	لڑکوں کے نام
the girl's thing	لڑی کی چز
the girls' things	لڑ کیوں کی چڑیں

When preceding  $\mathcal{Y}_{i}$ , certain pronouns, however, take the possessive form instead of the oblique:

يرا	-	б	+	یں
ميرا تيرا	=	б	+	Ţ
تتهارا	-	б	+	7
מנו		б	+	ہم
میری	-	ک	+	یں
تيرى	-	ک	+	Ţ
تهارى	-	ک	+	7
בארט	-	ک	+	2

# 6.4-6.6 Reading and Translation Drill

بھ میں کیا خرابی ہے؟

1

\* برکان پر literally meaning "on the store," idiomatically implies "at the store." Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the noun, pronoun, or adjective.

(the fruitseller) - جست الجما	
(the fruitseller's) - ج- (the fruitseller's)	
_ وفتر بردا ہے۔ (my)	
eny) دفتر میں پندرہ لڑ کیاں کام کرتی ہیں۔	
(that book) ?テ しん	
(that book's) ? - ビ / じ	
(these books) - البھتی بیں (these books)	
میں کیا ہے؟ (these books)	
) کے ساتھ کھیلتا ہوں۔ (good boys)	_ پر

6.7 The Interrogative كون and Its Oblique Forms

in its nominative form means "who" or "which."

وه لركا كون ٢٠

Who is that boy?

يرصاحب كون يي ؟

Who is this gentleman?

كون صاحب بين؟

Which gentleman is it?

When كون goes into the oblique, its singular form is كون while its oblique plural form is كون

In the oblique form, it may mean "whose," "whom," "which," or "what."

Whose book is this?

وہ کیس کا گھر ہے؟

Whose house is that?

Whose (plural) newspapers are these?

With whom (plural) do you sing?

In which book is this thing?

At what time is the class?

In the last example we see that the oblique case can exist even when a postposition is not explicitly present. (The Urdu sentence does not have a postposition for "at" after the noun (e.e. after the postposition is implied, this form is known as the implied oblique. In idiomatic Urdu, postpositions are often left out after temporal and locative nouns but their existence is nevertheless assumed. This assumption is evident in the fact that the noun and adjective related to time and location of an action go into the oblique case without an explicit postposition.

#### At what time does he go home?

It is assumed that  $e^{i\omega}$  is followed by a postposition,  $\downarrow$ , but the rules of idiomatic Urdu do not recommend that the postposition be explicitly stated. But as the use of the oblique form of the interrogative adjective i illustrates, the noun  $e^{i\omega}$  that it modifies is in the oblique case. In many locative expressions, the same rule is applied.

He goes to the office.

is in the oblique case with the postposition بر or بي implied after it.

He goes to the post office.

thas been changed into دانخان because of the implied postposition which puts it in the oblique.

Note that 2 can be followed by 2, 2, 2, 3 (depending upon the object it is modifying)

when inquiring about the possessor of a thing:

وہ س کا گھر ہے؟

Whose house is that?

وہ می کے چل بی ؟

Whose fruits are those?

Whose thing is that?

The compound Z C can mean "for," "for the sake of," or "in order to." Nouns and adjectives

preceding it will be in the oblique case:

He comes for Ali.

He comes for this girl.

وہ اچھے کیلوں کے لئے آتا ہے۔

#### He comes for good bananas.

In addition to nouns and adjectives, verbal infinitives can also occur before  $\mathcal{L}$ . In such instances, the infinitives will take the oblique case. For example, the will become  $\mathcal{L}$ , will become  $\mathcal{L}$ , etc.

وه کھانے کے لئے آتا ہے۔

He comes [in order] to eat.

She comes [in order] to dance.

Exception: Several pronouns followed by  $\angle \angle \angle$  do not go into the oblique case. Instead, they assume the possessive form.

for me	مرےکتے	=	22	+	يس .
for you	2 - 1.	-	22	+	تو
for you	تمهارے لئے	ve.	22	+	3
for us	بمارے لتے	=	22	+	e.

See also section 6.6.

The Z construction also has two common idiomatic usages:

ای گئے۔ therefore کیس لئے why

Do not confuse the two aforementioned idiomatic expressions with:

for this one ای کے لئے نم کے لئے for whom

# 6.7 - 6.8 Reading and Translation Drill

109

Translate the following into Urdu:

- 1. A shok comes here every day to eat.
- 2. With whom does he come?
- 3. Whose houses are those?
- 4. Sheila and Sunita go to the club to dance every night, but they don't drink alcohol.
- 5. Does he bring food for them every day?
- 6. I buy this car for you (your sake).
- 7. I go to London every year to watch tennis.
- 8. With whom do you sing? With crazy Raj?
- 9. What time is their class every day?
- 10. We come to Harvard [in order] to study but go to that office [in order] to work.
- 11. Because of love, there are tears in Nargis' eyes!

# 6.7 - 6.8 Substitutions

Replace the phrases in brackets with the Urdu equivalents of the English words indicated below.

you (least formal)

him

them

me

۲۔ (میری) وجہ سے علی تہیں آتا ہے۔

you (informal)

us

them

that girl

٣- كيا، تم (أن ) ك ساتھ پڑھتے ہو؟

me

us

those girls

those boys

٣- وه (تمهارے) پہلے کھاتا ہے؟

her

you (formal)

the Pakistani president

that boy

(مارے) بعد كون آتا ب؟ \_0

me

you (informal)

thern

his friend

(ای) کے اور کیا ہ؟ -1

that

our house

their thing

their things

(پنگ) کے نیچ ایک کتا ہے۔ \_4

that

window

this

those houses

٨- ہم (سیما) کے سامنے نہیں ناچتیں۔

you (formal)

those boys

this building

my brother

٩- (أس) ك باغ ك يتي بيت برا بازار ب-

our

their

my

his friend

·ا۔ تم (میرے) قریب رہے ہو۔

us

house

that building

this market

اا۔ (تمہارے گھر) کے آگے کیا ہے؟

these houses

those houses

that big building

this beautiful market

(أس برے گھر) کے اندر ( وس) كرے بيں۔ \_11

twenty-five

this big building

seven

twelve

my house

our friend's house

twenty-eight

her office

ا۔ (اِس عمارت) کے پاس ایک بہت بڑا بازار ہے۔

these buildings

our office

that big store

this poet's house

Pakistanis

our friends

that car

Aishwarya Rai and Salman Khan

آج كل وبال (كون) ب؟ \_10

whose house

whose things

whose store

whose newspapers

## 6.9 Pronunciation Drill: Aspirated, Perso-Arabic, and Retroflexive Sounds II

1

Column 2	Column 1
جھولا	فراب
گھر	الجھا
بھر تی	غم
جحنذا	خوشی
لوچا	موقع
م <del>رد</del> ده	ĖĻ
بھائی	عادت
50	چخچ
de de	مقبول

6.11 Conversation Practice

Andy: Hello, Jane. How are you?

Jane: Fine, thanks. What is this?

Andy: These are apples, bananas, and mangoes. These are for you.

Jane: Thanks so much. Is there a fruit seller's store near your house?

Andy: No. It's in front of my office, behind that big building.

- Jane: Do you go to get fruit every day?
- Andy: No, I go every week. Why?
- Jane: I want to go with you. There is a problem [fault: ゲリ in my car. With whom do you go?
- Andy: I go with my friend Ashok. He lives above my apartment.
- Jane: Do you want to go with me now?
- Andy: Yes, I want to buy oranges as well.

6.12 Songs

# Glossary for Songs

ول لکی = attachment, friendship, love (f)	ignorant, foolish تاران
يل جلا = lover; one with burned heart (m)	to sigh = آجيں گھرنا
and the set of the state of the sector	

tille = to amuse, to cheer, to distract

# 6.13 Vocabulary

after	کے بعد
angry; upset	ناراض
any; some (adj); someone (noun)	كوتى
to ask	يو چھنا
bad	ژب
because	کیونکہ
because of	کی وجہ سے
bed (m)	پلنگ

before	Ly eIL
behind	کے اسے پہلے کے پیچھے
beloved, sweetheart (m)	ساجن
building (f)	عمارت
chair (f)	55
clock/watch (f)	گھڑی
to explain, to cause to	فستجحانا
understand	
fault, blemish, (f)	خرابی
for the sake of, for, in order to	Ę
friendship (f)	دو سی
fruit seller (m/f)	کچل والا یا کچل والی
garden (m)	ĖĻ
heat, hot weather (f)	گری
in front of, across, facing	こう と、やし と
inside	کے سامنے، کے آگے کے اندر
king (m)	راجہ
life, soul; sweetheart; energy (f)	چان
Mahabharata Indian epic	مهابھارت
market/bazaar (m)	بازار
to meet	چان میما بھارت بازار میلنا

	1 . J. C .: C
near	کے نزدیک کے قریب م کے پاک
	Jy Z
news (f)	<i>ج</i> ر
now	اب
on top of	پر، کے اُوپر
post office (m)	ڈاک خانہ
reason (f)	وجہ
regarding	کے بارے میں
to say, to speak	ليهتا
to sleep	سوتا
test, trial, examination (m)	المتحان
therefore	اس چ
time (m)	وتت
under	2.2
who	كون
window (f)	کون کھڑکی کے ساتھ
with (in the company of)	کے ساتھ
for what reason, why	کِس لِبْحُ(کیوں)

### Chapter 7

# سكنا Expressing Potentials with

The verb (to be able to, or can) is never used by itself. It always needs the stem of another verb before it:

to be able to study

to be able to eat

پڑھ سکنا کھا سکنا

Note that when conjugating this construction, only the verb سكنا changes. The stem of the verb which is attached to سكنا does not change under any circumstances.

میں ہارورڈ جا سکتا ہوں۔

I can go to Harvard.

وہ کتاب پڑھ کتے ہیں۔

They can read a book.

Can you dance?

Verbs which combine with the stem of another verb are called compound verbs.

7.2 with Compound Verbs

In order to form a negative sentence with compound verbs, there are three options:

The particle تَبْعِين precedes the compound verb block:

وہ تہیں پڑھ سکتے۔

The particle نتجيل is placed between the verb stem and نتجيل: 2.

The particle تَبْيِل is placed at the end: 3.

The gradual shift of the negative particle to the end of the sentence corresponds to an increasing emphasis in negation. Hence example 3 is the most emphatic.

7.3 Further Uses of 19

In addition to being a conjunction meaning "and," Jet can also mean "more" and "further."

Would you like to eat more?

Can you sing more?

### 7.1-7.3 Reading and Translation Drill

123

میں اور نہیں پی سکتی۔ کیا، تم اور ناچ سکتی ہو؟ نہیں، مگر میں اور کا سکتی ہوں۔

#### 7.4 The Present Continuous Tense

The present continuous tense is formed in Urdu by combining the following components: the verb stem + the appropriate form of the participle of the verb  $l_{7}$ :  $l_{7}$  (for masculine singular subject),  $l_{1}$  (for masculine plural subject),  $l_{7}$  (for feminine singular/plural subject) + present tense form of  $l_{7}$  agreeing with the subject.

S 2.3	and the second se	
Feminine	Singular	Masculine
میں پڑھ رہی ہوں۔	I am studying.	یں پڑھ رہا ہوں۔
تو پڑھ رہی ہے۔	You are studying.	تو پڑھ رہا ہے۔
تم پڑھ رہی ہو۔	You are studying.	تم پڑھ رہے ہو۔
آپ پڑھ ربی بیں۔	You are studying.	آپ پڑھ رے ہیں۔
دہ پڑھ ربی ہے۔	He/She is studying.	وه پڑھ رہا ہے۔
	Plural	
ہم پڑھ رہی بیں-	We are studying.	يم پڑھ رہے ہیں۔
تم پڑھ رہی ہو۔	You are studying.	تم پڑھ رہے ہو۔
آپ پڑھ رہی بیں۔	You are studying.	آپ پڑھ رہے ہیں۔
وه پڑھ ربى يل-	They are studying.	-Ut 4 1 02 09

To form a negative sentence with this tense, place نبيل before the beginning of the verb block and drop the ده تبيس پر هر ربی . (She is not studying).

### 7.4 Reading and Translation Drill

### 7.5 The Comparative

In Urdu, all comparative and superlative expressions of adjectives are in relative terms. Thus, the comparative is expressed by saying, "x is bigger than y," while the superlative follows the form "x is the biggest of all." The postposition "*—*" is used in Urdu in the same sense as "than" and "of" are used in English. The comparative subject appears in the beginning of the sentence or phrase and that which the subject is being compared to follows it with the adjective agreeing with the comparative subject.

موہن ے

adjective agrees with subject

object of comparison

Ali is bigger (older) than Mohan.

adjective agrees with subject

- 4 5%

object of comparison

subject

على

subject

Sheila is bigger (older) than Ali.

Remember that  $\leftarrow$  is a postposition, so the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives governed by  $\leftarrow$  will be in the oblique case.

Those boys are bigger (older) than Ali.

Ali is bigger (older) than these boys.

#### 7.5 Substitutions

(بی سنترہ) اُس سیب سے اچھا ہے۔

those apples

those oranges

that fruit

these bananas

that boy

that beautiful girl

Harvard's students

Albert Einstein

یہ میز (اُن میزوں) سے مہتگی ہے۔

those windows

those carpets

those pens

that book

#### 7.5 Translation

Translate the following comparative statements:

- 1. Radha is more beautiful than Sunita.
- 2. Steve is brighter than Ali.
- This girl is better than that boy (المحكى).
- 4. He is older than me (12).
- 5. My shoes are more beautiful than the shoes of those girls.
- 6. Canada is cleaner than the U.S. because there are fewer people and less trash.
- 7. This picture is better than those pictures.
- 8. Is your (most formal) room bigger than my room?
- 9. These apples are more expensive than those apples.
- 10. Those carpets are cheaper than these carpets.

### 7.6 The Superlative

the rest of the sentence structure remains the same as it would in a comparative sentence.

ميرا لاكا ب ب يوشيار ب-

My son is the brightest (of all).

میری لڑکیاں سب سے ہوشیار ہیں۔

My girls are the brightest (of all).

- - 12 - - 03

He is the oldest (of all).

#### 7.6 Translation

Translate the following superlative statements.

- 1. This is the most delicious thing.
- 2. This is the most expensive carpet.
- 3. That is the cleanest room.
- 4. That is my oldest boy.
- 5. Is he your best friend?
- 6. Ghalib (غالب) is the world's best poet.
- 7. My sister is the most beautiful girl.
- Those are the most difficult books.
- 9. This picture is good but those pictures are the most beautiful.
- 10. Our house is the largest.

#### 7.7 Persian Adjectival Elements

It is quite common for Urdu to use the Persian comparative and superlative adjectives. These adjectives are formed by the addition of the  $\ddot{z}$  suffix (for comparative adjectives) and  $\dot{z}_{z}$  suffix

(for superlative adjectives). The use of  $\vec{r}$  and  $\vec{r}$  suffixes in Urdu is limited, for they can only be attached to adjectives of Persian origin.

good

better

best

This girl is better than that girl.

bad

worse

worst

بدتر بدترین

r

بہتر بہترین

He is the worst servant.

پستدیده The Persian adjective

is a commonly used Persian adjective meaning "favorite."

Tom Cruise is Sheila's favorite actor.

# 7.7 Reading and Translation Drill

# 7.8 Expressing More or Less

is used. Example : ترياده is used. Example :

This is more than that.

In this class there are more boys than in that class.

A similar construction is used to express "x is less than y," but instead of i is used.

This is less than that.

Both J and f can be combined with the comparative I suffix as seen in the following examples:

Students in this university are mostly American.

The price of this book is even less than that.

Note: ind rarely use the is suffix to express the superlative.

#### 7.8 Translation

# 7.8 Reading and Translation Drill

۲۔ کیا، دنیا میں سب سے زیادہ لوگ چین میں رہتے ہیں؟ ہندوستان میں امریکہ سے زیادہ لوگ رہتے ہیں۔ کینیڈا میں امریکہ سے کم لوگ رہتے ہیں۔ پاکستان میں سب نیادہ لوگ کیس شہر میں رہتے ہیں؟ کراچی میں یا لاہور میں؟

7.9 Cardinal Numbers 31-40

ایکتیس یا اکتیس	ri
بتيس	rr
	٣٣
چونتیس	٣٣
پينتيس	۳۵
چھتیں	٣٩
سينتين	٣٢
الأتنين	۳۸
أنتاليس يا أنچاليس	٣٩
<u>چ</u> ايس	۴.

# 7.10 Aggregatives

In order to indicate total plurality in Urdu, the suffix U is added to the numbers between two and ten, with the exception of six and nine:

both (special form)	دوتول
all three	تتيوں
all four	چ <u>ا</u> رول
all five	پانچوں

all six	ي <i>و کے پو</i>
all seven	ماتوں
all eight	آ تھوں
all nine	نو کے نو
all ten	دسول

The numbers six, nine, and numbers larger than ten are expressed in such a construction by being repeated and separated from each other by the postposition  $\mathcal{S}/\mathcal{S}$ , depending upon the gender of the noun that follows the numerical adjective.

الركي محكم محكم والرك الركري من محكم والمركي محكم الركي من محكم محكم الركري الركري الركري المركم المحكم والمراح In order to express indefinite plurality, the suffix ول or يول is added to the number. Common indefinite plurality adjectives are:

سيكرون يا سينكرون

لاكھوں

كروژول

بتر اروں

scores of hundreds of

thousands of

hundreds of thousands of

tens of millions of

مارے ساتھ دونوں رہ کے ہیں۔

Both can live with us.

وہ نتیوں لڑ کیاں سندر ہیں۔

All three of those girls are beautiful.

وہاں نو کی نو لڑ کیاں ناچتی ہی۔

All nine girls dance over there.

کورنیل میں سینکڑوں لڑکے پڑھتے ہیں۔

Hundreds of boys study at Cornell.

All hundred boys study at Cornell.

Note the difference between the last two sentences. The first sentence expresses indefinite plurality and the second one expresses total plurality.

7.10 Reading and Translation Drill

## 7.11 The Future Tense

The simple present tense is frequently used to express the immediate future:

#### I go there or I'll go there (immediate future).

The regular future tense is formed by the addition of two suffixes to the verb stem:

 Ist suffix:
  $\mathcal{O}$  (1st person singular),  $\mathcal{L}$  (2nd, 3rd person singular),  $\mathcal{O}$  (1st, 2nd, 3rd person plural),  $\mathcal{I}$  

 plural),
  $\mathcal{I}$  (2nd person  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}$ ).
 (2nd suffix:  $\mathcal{O}$  (feminine singular or plural),  $\mathcal{L}$  (masculine plural),  $\mathcal{O}$  (masculine singular).

 The suffixes used depend on the number and gender of the subject.
 (masculine singular).
 (masculine singular).

The following example will make this more clear:

	پڑھنا :verb	
	stem: ゆな	
Feminine	Masculine	Pronoun Subject
	Singular	
پڑھوں گی	پر هو لگا	یں
بدهيكي	ير هيگا	3
<u>پر هوگی</u>	پر هو ک	7
پر هینگی	پر هينگ	آپ
پرهيکی	پر هیگا	وہ/ہے
	Plural	
پ <sup>ر</sup> هینگی، پر <sup>ر</sup> هینگ	پرمینگ	م
<u>پ</u> ر هو گ	پر هو ک	7
ی <sup>د همین</sup> گی	پر هينگ	٦پ
بر هینگی	پرهينگ	بيراوه

There are three verbs that have irregular conjugations in the future tense on account of modifications in their verbal stems: to take, to give, and to be.

	لينا - to take	
Feminine	Masculine	Pronoun Subject
	Singular	
لونگی	لونگا	یں
لیکی	ليگا	3
لوگ	لوگے	تح
لو کلی لیکی لینگی لیکلی	لوگ لينگ ليگا	آپ
لیگی	يگا	03/~
	Plural	
لىنكى لينكى	لينگ	م
لوگ	لوگ	7
لبينكى	لو <i>کے</i> لینگے لینگے	آپ
لینگی/لینگے لوگل لینگی	لينك	ی <i>ے او</i> ہ

Feminine

to give - دينا

Masculine

**Pronoun Subject** 

میں تو

	Singular	
رو نگی	دونگا	
و یکی	ديگا	
دوگی	(وک	

وينگى د يچى	دينگ	آپ
د یکی	ديكا	ين /وه
	Plural	
د ينگى/د <u>ينگ</u> دوگى	د ینگ	م
دوگی	ووگ	2
وینکی وینگی	دينگ	آب
د ينگى	دينگ	ہے اوہ
	じター to be	
Feminine	Masculine	Pronoun Subject
	Singular	
ہونگی	זע נא	یں
ہوگ	вы	7
ہوگی	Ln	5
ہو تگی	يو تگھ	آپ
ہوگ	Br	ب <i>ے</i> /وہ
	Plural	
ہو نگی اہو نگے	E sr	r.
ہوگی	Lor	7
ہوگگی	يو تک	آپ
ټو کلی	ہو نگے	سير اوه

Note: The future tense of t of can also be used to indicate the suppositional, particularly when it is used as an auxiliary verb. For example, t or t means "He will be there" (future) or "He

must be there" (suppositional). وه لركي يونيور سرش مين پره ربی بوگي That girl must be studying at the university." امريك كا صدر تيندوستان جا رما بوگا "The American President must be going to India." We will discuss the future suppositional in greater detail in chapter 15.

### 7.11 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. We will go to the cinema tomorrow.
- 2. What will you (informal) do tonight?
- 3. Will we be able to eat at your house?
- 4. Ali will cook tomorrow and we will eat with him.
- 5. Will Madonna sing on Saturday?
- 6. Tonight I will read a book and write a letter.
- 7. Will they buy a newspaper today?
- 8. He will give a lot of money for this horse.
- 9. He will not be able to give his house for the party.
- 10. Where will those beautiful girls be tomorrow night?
- 11. Sir, your son must be playing tennis right now.

7.12 Pronunciation	Drill: Diphthongs
يل	يل
یل	یل
یں	يس .
2	2
میں	يل
پېيل	پچيل
لپودا	پودا
سودا	سودا
گودا	گودا
رونا	رونا
اور	اور
13.	J <b>?</b> .
گور	گور
موت	موت
<b>ف</b> ت	نوت

# 7.13 Response Drill

Answer the following questions.

(Conversation) گفتگو 7. 14

7.15 Conversation Practice

Telephone conversation

Reshma: Hello. This is Reshma. Who is speaking?

Mummy darling: Reshma! It's me, your mother! I am speaking from the hospital.

Reshma: Greetings! Mummy darling! What are you doing at the hospital?

Mummy darling: You know that Sunil is in the hospital. He will be here for three days more.

Reshma: When are you coming home?

Mummy darling: I am going to the market first  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  and then I will come home.

Reshma: Can you buy me something from the market?

Mummy darling: What do you want?

Reshma: Oh! Mummy darling! You are the best mother! Can you buy me some sweets and chocolates?

Mummy darling: Reshma! I will not buy you chocolates and sweets! You know that too many sweets are bad for you.

Reshma: In my opinion, they are very good for me. They give me life!

Mummy darling: Absolutely not! I will not buy you trash! I will buy some fruit for you. Fruit is

better than sweets. Do you want some mangoes? Mangoes are your favorite fruit.

Reshma: Yes, I want some very sweet mangoes and some sweets also.

Mummy darling: Oh my dear (پاری) Reshma! My crazy daughter! What shall I do with you?

Reshma: Mummy darling. Will you buy me some sweets?

Mummy darling: OK but you will eat them after dinner.

Reshma: Thank you, Mummy darling. You are the best mother in the world. I love you very

much! Bye.

Mummy darling: Bye, my crazy daughter!

7.16 Songs

 ابتها، تو ہم چلتے ہیں بکر کب طوکے؟ جب تم كهوك بمعرات کو؟ بان، بان، آدهی رات کو کہاں؟ وہیں جہاں کوئی آتا جاتا نہیں

# Glossary for Songs

( وہاں) = there (emphatic form of وہاں)

to decline, sink, fade (as sunset, life, etc.) ور هلتا

where (relative pronoun) جہاں

# 7.17 Vocabulary

athlete/player (m/f)	کھیلاڑی
to bathe	غُسل كرنا ، نهانا
to be able to, can	سکنا
best	يهترين
better	74.
both	دونوں

box (m)	ۇتە
to change	يدلنا
to cry	رونا
clothes (m)	کیڑے
to come along, to go along, to	چلنا
set out, to walk, to embark	
to cook	٢Ę
door (m)	وروازه
father (m)	الِد، ابًا، پِتا، باپ، بابا
father-in-law	÷
favorite	يسنديده
flower (m)	يتفول
forgive/excuse me	معاف كيجيئة كرو
forty	چالیس
grandfather (maternal)	tt
grandfather (paternal)	واوا
grandmother (maternal)	ىانى
grandmother (paternal)	داوي
grown up, elder person (m/f)	دادی بژاربژی
holiday, vacation (f)	· De
human being, man, person (m)	بیسی آدمی / إنسان سیکژوں مرسینکژوں
hundreds of	سيكروں مرسينكروں

hundreds of thousands of	لاكھوں
husband (m)	لاکھوں شوہر، پَہتِ (پِتی)
less	F
letter (m)	خط
to listen	ستتنا
to be made, built, created;	tł
to become	
to make, to build, to create	tt:
millions of	کروڑوں پیسا، پیسہ
money, cash, wealth; coin (m)	پیدا، پیہ
mother	والده، اممّان(اتَّى)، مان، ماتا
mother-in-law	ساس
more	<u>زیا</u> دہ
narcissus (f)	ترجس
to open	كھولنا
or	Ļ
to pick up	أتحانا
poor person (m); poor (adj.)	غريب
to reach	بمخينا
ready	-تيار
	1 st
rich	

service (f)

sister (f)

خِد مت، سیوا دِیدِی، بابی، آپا، بهن

a respectful title for sister or anybody older to whom one wants to show reverence shut up; be quiet چې ريو something; some sorrow (m) پڑھائی studies, education (f) 2 swift, quick; hot (spicy), fiery, sharp ليحنى that is to say, i.e. thirty خيال thought, idea, opinion (m) بزارول thousands of بر جلی تچن، بیوی بدتر بدترین trash (m) wife (f) worse worst

149

#### Chapter 8

## 8.1 Formal Imperatives (with 1)

The honorific imperative is used for people who are referred to with the  $\frac{1}{2}$  pronoun. It is formed by taking the stem of the verb and adding  $\frac{2}{2}$  (*ie*) to it. (In Urdu, the *i* vowel can be written either as long or short. Thus one may write the imperative of  $\frac{1}{2}$  as  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ .)

Infinitive: كانا	Stem: كها	کھاتیے :Imperative
ميلتا	میل	مليك
يرمعنا	ø*1	يدهي

In stems that end in U, a U is inserted between the stem and  $\doteq$  (ie), e.g.,  $\vdots$  becomes  $\doteq$ Irregular verbs are:

Infinitive:	لين	Imperative:	2
	وينا		و تجليخ
	15		25

In many situations the use of this imperative conveys the sense of English "please."

Translate these sentences using the honorific imperative:

Please eat two apples.

Please read this book.

3. Please come with me.

- 4. Please bring a box with you.
- 5. Please look.
- 6. Please take more food.
- 7. Please work better than this!
- 8. Please give a chicken.
- 9. Please drink some tea.
- 10. Please go home!

A more formal imperative than the aformentioned one is formed by the addition of b to the formal imperative. This imperative is only used in situations in which great deference is implied.

8.2 Informal Imperatives (with )

The imperative used to command those who are referred to in the  $\beta$  form is formed by the addition of  $\beta$  to the stem:

There are two irregular rimperatives:

دو دينا لو لينا

Change the following formal imperatives into informal ones:

## 8.3 Least Formal Imperatives (with $\vec{y}$ )

The stem of the verb acts as the imperative to be used with the  $\vec{J}$  form.

23	5	do
دينا	دے	give
لينا	2	take
كھانا	كھا	eat
بينا	ų	drink

#### **8.4 Negative Imperatives**

In order to form a negative imperative, insert or a right before the imperative word:

Don't do this (formal)!	يه مت کیچے!
Don't read (formal)!	مت پڑھیے!
Don't go (informal)!	نه چاؤ!
Don't come (least formal)!	مت آ!

#### 8.5 The Infinitive as Imperative

The infinitive of a verb can also serve as an imperative. It connotes a neutral or impersonal form

of the imperative in contexts when degrees of formality are not regarded as necessary.

Give two sers of meat.

Don't drink this water.

Don't sit here.

When we encountered مرباني in Chapter 1, its implication was one of "thanks." However, when مرباني is used with the postposition -, it acts as the adverb "kindly."

Kindly do this work/Please do this work.

The expression مہریاتی سے or مہریاتی فرماکر may also be used instead of مہریاتی کر کے as an alternative expression for "please, kindly."

Whereas  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{A}}$  is usually used with formal imperatives,  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{A}}$  can act as its counterpart in informal imperative constructions with the connotation of "just" or "please just." Idiomatically its use corresponds to the English expression "would you mind?" The literal meaning of  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{A}}$  is "slightly" or "a little bit."

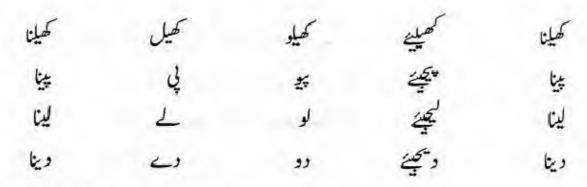
Please just give that book (informal).

#### 8.6 Reading and Translation Drill

٩.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the imperative of the verb indicated in the parentheses.

			ا سے آپ یہ کتابیں	
	(don't go	o, formal)	ا سے وہاں	۲_ مهربانی
		(read, least formal)		۳۔ ذرابی
	(cook, informal)		ارے لئے وہ چاول	۳_ ذرا م
		(give, informal)	د ٿي	۵_ ذرا را
	(	(don't drink, informa	d)	۲_ پانی_
	(d	lon't eat, least forma	1)	2- مرچ
	(w	rite, informal)	یک خط	۸_ ذرا أ
		(give, formal)	سيب	۹۔ پچپاس
	(t	ake, formal) .	ں کیلے	۱۰_ پینتالیہ
	Summar	y of Imperative Fo	orms	
Impersonal &	Least Formal, j	Informal, 7	آپ Formal,	Infinitive
Less Urgent				
پڑھنا	ג'מ	ير هو	ي <sup>ر</sup> هي	پڑھنا
كھاتا	كھا	كمحاق	كحايية	كھانا
		154		



Note: Gender is not marked in imperative forms.

#### 8.7 Further Uses of UM

We have already encountered 13 as the "to be" verb and its use in the habitual present tense as

an auxiliary verb. Use is also used in the sense of "to become, to take place and to happen."

What can happen here/What can be done here?

What takes place here?

What is going on?

when is used with its participle forms, بوت، موتى، موت , it indicates generalities or

statements of fact.

Nowadays there is (generally) a lot of heat.

There is (generally) a lot of filth in New York.

Are there (generally) good students at Harvard?

کیا، ہندوستان میں کھانا ایتھا ہوتا ہے؟

Is the food in India (generally) good?

8.7 Reading and Translation Drill

## 8.8 The Past Participles of ter .

The verb عونا has two past participles, each of which is associated with a special meaning and function. We will discuss the أتنا participle here and the *العا* participle in Chapter 12. The past participle and its various forms, خصي (masculine plural), أتنا (feminine singular), and (feminine plural), are used for "was, were." It is declined as follows:

Feminine	Translation	Masculine	Pronoun
تتحمى	I was	تھا	یں
تتقى	You were	تحا	3
تتقى	She/he was	تتحفا	09/~
تتحين	We were	æ	یک
تتحيي	You were	ž	آپ
تتحين	They were	ä	يداده
تتحين	You were	ä	ž

Examples:

وه کل رات کو کہاں تھے؟

Where were they last night?

Ten years ago I was a student.

ده چر مر په مخل-

That thing was on the table.

Yesterday morning at eight o'clock the girls were in school.

 $\vec{b}$  and its variants are also used as auxiliary verbs in various past tense constructions. They function exactly like  $\frac{1}{6}$  in the present tense. Examples:

وه كام كرتا تقار

He used to work.

He was working.

She was able to work.

#### 8.8 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. Were you a doctor 20 years ago?
- 2. He was a very bright student many years ago.
- 3. Rita Hayworth was our favorite actress.
- 4. Were you at Sheila's house with your friends last week?
- 5. Last week Raj was working in the restaurant. Now he is not there.

#### 8.9 The Past Habitual Tense

The past habitual tense is formed in a manner similar to the present habitual tense except that the

present form of the auxiliary verb is replaced by its corresponding past form.

Present habitual:

I study. میں پڑھتا ہوں۔ He works there. وہ وہاں کام کرتا ہے۔

Past habitual:

I used to study. وہ وہاں کام کرتا تھا۔ He used to work there.

This tense is used to denote regular or habitual actions in the past. The conjugation pattern is as

follows:

Feminine	Masculine	Pronoun
پڑ ھتی تھی	پڑھتا تھا	یں
پڑھتی تھی	پڑھتا تھا	لو
پڑھتی تھی	پڑھتا تھا	æ <sup>/09</sup>
پڑھتی تھیں	喜 产生	م

پڑھتی تھیں	بر هت تق	7
پڑھتی تھیں	پڑھتے تھے	آپ
پڑھتی تھیں	<u> بڑھتے</u> تھے	æ/09

# 8.9 Reading and Translation Drill

میری وہ گاڑی تو آپ کی گاڑی سے بھی زیادہ تیز چل سکتی تھی۔ وہ تیز دھوپ کی وجہ سے مکان کے اندر کام کرتی تھی۔

8.10 The Past Continuous Tense

The past continuous tense is used to describe actions that were in progress at a particular time in the past. Again, this tense is formed in the same way as the present continuous tense, except that the present form of  $U_{\mathcal{H}}$  is replaced by its past counterpart.

Present continuous:

I am studying. میں پڑھ رہا ہوں۔ He is working. وہ کام کر رہا ہے۔

Past continuous:

I was studying. بی پڑھ رہا تھا۔ He was working. وہ کام کر رہا تھا۔

The conjugation pattern is as follows:

Masculine	Pronoun
پڑھ رہا تھا	یں
پڑھ رہا تھا	لو
پڑھ رہا تھا	æ <sup>109</sup>
يره دب تح	<i>م</i>
يره دے تھ	تم
پڙھ رہے تھے	آپ
پڙھ رے تھ	2109
	پڑھ رہا تھا پڑھ رہا تھا پڑھ رہے تھ پڑھ رہے تھے

8.10 Reading and Translation Drill

8.11 Cardinal Numbers 41-50

۳۱ آکتالیس ۳۲ بیالیس ۳۳ تینتالیس

۲۹ چوالیس ۲۵ پینتالیس ۲۹ چھیالیس ۲۷ سینتالیس ۲۹ اڑتالیس ۹۹ انچاس ۵۰

## 8.12 Pronunciation Drill: Doubling of Consonants

ž,	<i>7</i> 4
كتتحا	كتفا
E.	t,
б	ت ا
e,	La se
ţţ	ڈ یا
كدا	گدا
دستا	67
مد	عدا
Ţæ.	بيجيا
صفاک	صفا
غدار	غدر
-تجاد	تحده
غَسَّال	غُسل

رڙاق	رِزق	
Ę	التحا	
Ę	E	
	8.13 کفتگو (Conversation)	
C,	(راج کے گھر میں، کھانے پ	
	زر من بیٹی، تم یہاں بیٹھو۔	متى:
	جی نہیں۔ آنٹی آپ یہاں نیٹھیے۔	بزگس:
يرے پاس!	نہیں، نہیں۔ وہ ہر وقت یہاں بیٹھتی ہے،	پتا.ى:
	ریشما! تو کہاں جا رہی ہے؟ یہاں بیٹھ۔	حمّى:
تى ہوں۔	نہیں۔ میں نرگس دیدی کے پاس بیٹھنا چاہ	ريشما:
	او ہو! یے کیا ہو رہا ہے؟	راج:
بمحصوب	ہاں، ہاں۔ کھانا ٹھنڈا ہو رہا ہے۔ تم لوگ *	پتا.ى:
	نرگس، کیا تم پانی پینا چاہتی ہو یا دودھ؟	ر شى:
	شہیں۔ نرگس کشی پیئے گی۔	(15:
	کسی! کسی گھر میں نہیں ہے۔ باں، البقہ دہی	رڅى:
	بیٹی، یہ تمہارا گھرہے، مت شرماؤ۔ اچھا، ب	متى:
پاپڑ اور یہ ہے آم کا اچار۔ تم	کا سالن، بیہ سبزی، بیہ گوشت کی برمانی، بیہ	
	سبزی خور تو نہیں؟	1.1
ت اچھی چیزیں ہیں۔ مگر میں	نہیں آنٹ میں ہر چیز کھاتی ہوں۔یہ تو بہہ	زگس:
	کھانے سے پہلے پیاز اور نمک کھاتی ہوں۔	
کے ساتھ پیار کھاؤنگا۔	کیا؟! ممّی، روٹی دیجیئے۔ میں بھی آج روٹی	いら:

## 8.14 Conversation Practice

Ali:	Sunita, you sit here. Reshma, you sit over there, and I'll sit by you.
Sun ita:	Is the food (generally, $\leftarrow$ $\checkmark$ ) good here?
Reshma:	Yes, it is (generally) very good. I was here last week. The chicken curry and
	biriyani are delicious.
Sunita:	But I don't eat meat. I am vegetarian.
Ali:	You can eat lentils, bread, and yogurt. Lentils are (generally) very good.
Reshma:	Yes, they are also good for your health.
Waiter:	What do you people want to eat and drink? Would you like to eat papad?
Ali:	No, we will drink lassi and we will eat chicken curry, biriyani, rice, lentils,
	vegetable curry, and yogurt.
Sun ita:	Also, give us ( in ) some onions and pickles. Are the pickles very hot?
Reshma:	A lot of red peppers are not good for your health. Ali also eats a lot of spices.
Waiter:	In our pickles there are no red peppers. Would you like some bread with your

food?

Ali:

Yes, we will take both bread and rice.

8.15 Songs

میر می جان کچھ بھی کیچیئے () چاہے جان میری کیچی*ئ*ے پر دل ہمیں کو دیکھیئے کبھی یاد ہمیں کھی کیچیئے کبھی نام مارا کیچیئے سپنوں میں آیا کیچیئے

کرتی تھیں جو دیوانہ

## Glossary for Songs

....

8.16 Vocabulary

airplane (m)	يتواكى جيهاز
although	البقر، أكرچہ
army (f)	نوج
to catch, apprehend	پکڑنا
chicken (f)	مر فی
child (m)	
childhood (m)	بچين
cold (adjective)	<b>ٹھنڈ</b> ا
cold (noun, f)	سردی، تھنڈ
cook (m)	بادَرچى
curry (m)	سالن
chicken curry	مُرغی کا سالن

meat curry	کوشت کا سالن سبر ی کا سالن
vegetable curry	مبزی کا سالن
to die	برنا
dream (m)	پینا
enough!	بى
fear (m/f)	ۇر
to fear	ۇر ئا
to fear x	x - ڈرنا
fifty	پچپاس
guest (m/f)	مبمان
health (f)	صحت
hot	1
hunger (f)	کھوک ج
knife (f)	چر ی
to laugh	بتسنا
last, past, previous; back; latter	المحجمل
lemon/lime (m)	پیچھلا نمیو، کیموں دال
lentils (f)	وال
lover (m)	عاشيق
being a lover (f)	عاشيقى
meat (m)	گوشت گدشته خد
meat eater (m/ f)	گوشت خور

milk (m)	دُود <i>ه</i>
mischief (f)	شرارت خر <sup>م</sup> ورت
necessity (f)	
necessity/need for x	x کی ضرورت
noise, uproar, disturbance (m)	شور
onion (f)	پياز
out, outside	باير، کے باہر
papad (crispy appetizers) (m)	ない
pepper (f)	いん
pickles (hot) (m)	اچار
please, kindly (with 🖵 forms)	مہربانی ہے، مہربانی کرکے
	مهربافی فرماکر
(with مم forms)	ورا
relatives, family members (m)	رشته دار
rice (m pl)	<i>چ</i> اول
rice w/ meat or vegetables (f)	بريانى
salt (m)	نمک
to scream, yell	فتجتم
season (m)	موسم
to be shy, recitent	شرمانا
sick, ill (adj.); sick person (m/f)	بيماد
sickness, illness (f)	چمار بیماری
17	1

to sit	بليثصنا
song (m)	بیٹھنا گیت، گانا، نغمہ بات کرنا
to speak, to talk, converse	بات كرنا
spices (m)	مصالحہ (مسالا
sunshine, heat of sun (f)	د مۇپ
time, age; world; fortune (m)	زماند
thief (m)	19.
thirst (f)	<u>با</u> س
vegetable (f)	سبرى
vegetarian (m/f)	بزی خور ا شاکاباری
woman (f)	عورت
yogurt (m)	دېمى

#### Chapter 9

The postposition  $\int$  in Urdu has several uses. We will systematically discuss the most important uses in this chapter.

## 9.1 🖌 as a Temporal Marker

As we have seen in previous chapters, days of the week and most of the times of the day are

marked by J to mean "on," "in," and "at."

میں ہر پیر کو اسکول جاتا ہوں۔

I go to school every Monday.

Does he go to the cinema in the evening?

Note that among the times of the day only  $\mathcal{E}^{\circ}$  "morning" does not use the postposition  $\mathcal{I}$ .

## 9.1 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. We can play tennis on Saturday because we are busy on Friday.
- 2. My friend drinks wine every evening.
- 3. Can you read books every morning?
- 4. What are you (informal) doing tonight?
- 5. Why are both of you going to school on Sunday?

## 9.2 f as a Direct Object Marker

When the direct object of an Urdu sentence is animate or specific, then I marks such an object.

میں علی کو بھیجتا ہوں۔

I send Ali.

(subject -- direct object -- object marker y -- verb)

I send that boy.

(subject -- direct object -- object marker 9 -- verb)

Although it is necessary to use f with a direct object that is animate, we can see in the example below that f can also mark a direct object when that object is inanimate but needs to be emphasized. If no emphasis is intended, then f is not employed after inanimate objects.

You buy this carpet. (emphasis on object)

(subject -- inanimate direct object -- object marker y-- verb)

آپ بيه قالين خريد يے۔

You buy this carpet. (object not emphasized)

(subject -- inanimate direct object -- verb)

## 9.2 Reading and Translation Drill

9.2 Substitutions

that beautiful girl

those clever boys

your friend's brother

his friend

that vagabond

those famous actors

our daughter

your (least formal) doctor

those newspapers

the best book

these big expensive houses

his red shoes

## 9.3 🖌 as an Indirect Object Marker

When a sentence has both a direct and an indirect object, only the indirect object is marked by f.

He gives a book to Ali.

(subject -- verb -- direct object -- indirect object)

The above word order is the usual order in English in which the direct object precedes the

indirect object. In Urdu is the word order is reversed, with the indirect object usually preceding

the direct object.

(subject -- indirect object marked by -- direct object -- verb)

If the sentence has temporal and locative elements then they are placed between the indirect and direct objects.

In the evening, he can give Ali the book there.

(subject -- indirect object marked by J -- temporal phrase -- locative phrase -- direct object -- verb)

This order may slightly change depending upon the element of the sentence that needs to be especially emphasized.

By placing at the beginning of the sentence, the temporal element is emphasized.

### 9.3 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. He gives me money every Monday.
- 2. Can you give the poor money tonight?
- 3. They give food to my friends every Thursday.

4. What can you give us?

5. I can give you the world.

# بيند- in Verbal and Adjectival Constructions كو 9.4

In Urdu the logical subject of certain verbal and adjectival constructions is sometimes marked by "pleasing" is a predicate adjective used in constructions in which the logical subject in English is marked by  $\mathcal{L}$ . The verb ( $\mathcal{L}$  or  $\mathcal{L}$ ) agrees with the grammatical subject in Urdu.

Ali likes this book. (Literally: This book is pleasing to Ali.)

(= logical subject in English) على grammatical subject in Urdu, تتاب

I like these things. (Literally: These things are pleasing to me.)

(کو grammatical subject in Urdu, محمل = logical subject in English marked by کری) In the sentences above, the verb agrees with the grammatical subjects in Urdu (چيزيک and ترکب) and not with the logical subjects in English. In the past tense, the auxiliary (هم in its appropriate

forms, replaces  $\frac{1}{4}$  following the same rules of agreement.

مجھ کو یہ پھل پیند تھا۔

I liked this fruit.

(verb agreeing with علي = grammatical subject in Urdu)

لڑے کو کتاب پیند تھی۔

The boy liked the book.

The guests liked the vegetables.

(verb تقیی agreeing with سبتر یال grammatical subject in Urdu)

#### 9.4 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

1. I like Madonna very much.

2. Some people like tea more than coffee.

3. Do you (least formal) like these big buildings?

4. I like biriyani very much but I can't eat rice.

5. I don't like meat, but I like sweets very much.

6. Did Reshma like the Chinese food?

7. When Ravi was in India, he did not like watching Indian movies.

8. He is my favorite actor but he cannot sing well. His voice is not very good.

f marks the logical subject of "the infinitive + q " construction which conveys that something "has to be," "is necessary," or "must be done."

Ali has to study.

Rahim has to go.

At times, the verbal infinitive may have an object. In such a situation, in some dialects of

Urdu-Hindi the infinitive agrees with that object:

Ali has to read the book.

In the above sentence, the verbal infinitive بر هنا has been declined to بر هن because بر عن , the

object of برهنا, is feminine. In order to make a negative sentence, برهنا is used.

Ali doesn't have to study/read.

Ali doesn't have to study/read (emphatic).

In the past and future tenses, the verb - is replaced by the auxiliary  $\vec{u}$  or  $\vec{v}$ :

Rahim had to go home.

رجيم كو كهر جانا ہوگا۔

Rahim will have to go home.

Ali had to read the book.

تراب agrees with the gender of its object بر هن تقل مقل

#### 9.6 Infinitive as the Subject

In the "infinitive +  $\frac{1}{4}$ " construction, the infinitive can also act as the subject of the sentence.

It is necessary to study/studying is necessary.

If an adjective is inserted between the infinitive and  $\leftarrow$ , then the adjective becomes the

predicate of the infinitive.

پڑھنا اچھا ہے۔

It is good to study/studying is good.

In the past and future tenses, the auxiliaries and future tenses, the auxiliaries and replace 7:

پڑھنا اچھا تھا۔

It was good to study/ studying was good.

ير هنا الجها موكا-

It will be good to study/studying will be good.

#### 9.5-9.6 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. I have to write these three essays (papers) by tomorrow.
- 2. Do you have to read your friend's letters at this time of the night?
- 3. I have to go to school on Sunday.
- 4. What do they have to do tomorrow afternoon?
- 5. She doesn't have to cook.
- 6. What did you have to do all day yesterday?

constructions are similar to "the infinitive + -" construction in that the logical subject

in such constructions is also marked by  $\hat{y}$ .  $\hat{y}$  is an impersonal verb form that may be preceded by either a noun or a verbal infinitive. In case of a noun, the construction means that the noun is desired, wanted, or needed by the logical subject. For example,

Jim wants a book.

(logical subject "Jim" marked by )

In this world everyone needs love.

(logical subject "everyone" marked by )

If the object desired is plural, then any be optionally nasalized:

Do you want these clothes?

In the past tense, the  $\frac{2}{2}$  construction uses the past auxiliary  $\frac{2}{2}$ . Since the logical subject is marked by  $\frac{2}{2}$ , the past auxiliary will agree in number and gender with the desired object. Examples:

Raj wanted an apple. (the auxiliary تحا agreeing with سيب)

Nargis wanted some saris. (the auxiliary محمير) agreeing with

In order to convey the sense that something "ought to" or "should be" done, a verbal infinitive is placed before جاجيك. The logical subject continues to be marked by f, which cuts off agreement between it and the impersonal جاجات

Ali ought to study/read.

چھوٹی بتجی کو ابھی سونا چاہیئے۔

The little girl ought to sleep now.

In some dialects of Urdu-Hindi, the verbal infinitive is made to agree in number and gender with its object, if it has one:

علی کو کتاب پڑھنی چاہیئے۔

Ali ought to read the book.

(Verb يرهنا agreeing with its object يرهنا (كتاب

دوکاندار کو یہ کچل بیچنے چاہیئیں۔

The shopkeeper ought to sell these fruits.

(verb يجل agreeing with its object يج

In the past tense, is added at the end of the sentence. This auxiliary will agree in number and gender with any object of the verbal infinitive. Examples:

علی کو پڑھنا چاہیئے تھا۔

Ali ought to have/should have studied.

دوکاندار کو یہ پھل بیچنے چاہیئے تھے۔

The shopkeeper ought to have/should have sold these fruits.

نہیں constructions may be put into the negative by using the particle پایک

A college student should not drink alcohol!

## 9.7 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. He ought to write these papers (essays) now.
- 2. We ought to eat but we have to go there.
- 3. Sunil ought not to have fallen in love with Nargis!

- 4. Both these houses are expensive. Would you like to buy them?
- 5. I would like some salt, onions, and bread.
- 6. We ought to wash our clothes.
- 7. The guest wanted some more alcohol.
- 8. Sheila's brother wants five shirts.
- 9. The patient (sick person) ought to have drunk this medicine.
- 10. Rahim should have sold this beautiful carpet yesterday.

## 9.8 with Abstract Possessions

مَحْوَىٰی), "happiness" (تُوَثَى), "happiness" (تُوثَى), "happiness" (تُوثَى), "worry" (قَرَرُ صَتَ), "leisure" (قررصت) and so on. In this construction, the verb agrees with the abstract noun being possessed since the logical subject in English is marked with . We will discuss this further in Chapter 11 when we consider expressions of possession.

I am tired.

Do you have free time?

We are very worried.

Sunil needed money (lit. Sunil had the need for money).

In the last example above, the past tense auxiliary متحقى is in the feminine agreeing with the abstract noun ضرورت.

## 9.8 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. My friends can play tomorrow because they have free time (leisure).
- 2. I cannot work because I am very tired.
- 3. Are you (informal) happy today?
- No. I am worried because tomorrow evening I have to go to school.
- 5. I have some free time today and I ought to play tennis.
- 6. The patient needed the best doctor (lit. had need of the best doctor).
- Did you need more books from the library last night? (lit. did you have the need for more books from the library last night?)

## 9.9 Special Object Forms

When certain pronouns in the oblique case are combined with  $\mathcal{I}$ , they generally have a special form:

<i>چ</i> کو	\$.
بخط کو	in the second se
57	شهين
ای کو	<u>_</u> ]
اس کو	ت
یم کو	ہمیں
اِن کو	انہیں
أن كو	أنهيس
کس کو	2
کن کو	كتهيل

The use of these special forms is considered preferable in idiomatic Urdu.

I have to work.

Both these sentences are grammatically correct, but the second sentence is more idiomatic. Note that the combination of pronouns and postpositions is only possible when the postposition  $\int$  immediately follows the pronouns.

9.9 Reading and Translation Drill

ہمیں ایک ٹھنڈی کوکا کولا چاہیئے۔ اس بات کے بارے میں تہہیں نر گس کی دالدہ سے پوچھنے کی ضرورت تھی۔

Translate the following sentences into Urdu using the special object form.

- 1. He has a lot of work but he has to go there.
- 2. Do you (informal) have free time? We don't have free time.
- To whom will you (least formal) give this book?
- I will send him in the evening.
- 5. Do you (informal) have a cough?
- 6. I should have gone home last night! I am very sick today.

## 9.10 Stem + SIE

When two actions are performed consecutively by the same subject, the sentence is formed in this manner:

stem of the infinitive of the first verb +  $\int \int \mathcal{L} + \text{ conjugated form of second verb.}$ 

The enclitics  $\int or \leq divide the two actions and can be used interchangeably unless the first verb is <math>i \int or$  a complex verb formed with  $i \int dt$ . If this is the case then only the enclitic  $\leq can$  be used.

Having danced, I sing.

(subject -- verb 1 stem -- enclitic -- verb 2)

The second verb is conjugated and agrees with the subject.

Having done work, I watch T.V.

The "stem +  $\int$ " construction occurs in one of the common Urdu phrases used to express "please." Instead of using مريانی کر کے for "please" or "kindly," the phrase مریانی کر کے "having done a kindness") may be used. In formal Urdu, the verb فرماتا (lit. "to order, to command") is sometimes used instead of کرنا , resulting in the phrase مریانی فرما کر (lit. "having commanded a kindness") being employed as a very polite equivalent of the English "please."

Please fasten the child's seat belt.

Combine the two sentences in the following manner and then translate them into English:

Example:

Having eaten the food, I go home.

9.10 Reading and Translation Drill

## 9.11 Noun-Verb Agreement in Urdu

In Urdu, if there are several inanimate nouns, the number-conjugation of the verb will depend on the last object in the series.

I like rice, dal, and bread.

The end verb is  $\leftarrow$  instead of  $\mathcal{I}$  because  $\mathcal{I}$  is singular. If the series of nouns has animate beings, then the verb will be in the plural:

مجھ کو علی، راشد، روی اور گیتا بہت پیند ہیں۔

I like Ali, Rashid, Ravi, and Gita very much.

9.11 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- Sheila likes Matt Damon, Brad Pitt, and Tom Cruise. Which actors do you like? 1.
- 2. Please give Neil and Dimple apples, oranges, and milk.
- Do you (least formal) like chicken curry and rice? 3.
- Do you (informal) like Lata Mangeshkar and Muhammad Rafi? -- Who are they? 4.
- We don't like Amitabh Bachchan. Our favorite actor is Shahrukh Khan. 5.
- Mallar liked that blue shirt. 6.
- 7. Abid has to buy some pens and books from the store.

#### 9.12 Cardinal Numbers 51-60

۵۱ اکاون ۵۲ باون

۵۳ ترین ۵۴ چون ۵۵ چون ۵۹ چهپن ۵۷ ستادن ۵۸ الهادن ۹۹ آنسه ۲۰ ساله

## 9.13 Expressing Time with the Enclitic $\int I \leq I$

The verb  $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$  is used in Urdu to express time in phrases that are equivalent to the English "o'clock." In order to express *complete hours*, the past participles of  $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$ , are used.  $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$  is only used for 1, and  $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$  for all other numbers.

For expressions indicating minutes past the hour,  $\mathcal{G}$  is combined with the enclitic  $\mathcal{I}/\mathcal{L}$ . In order to say 8:10, one would say "having struck 8, it is 10 minutes."

In this construction,  $\int \int \mathcal{L}$  are added to the stem of  $\mathcal{L}$  and then followed by the number of minutes. To express minutes before the hour, the postposition  $\mathcal{L}$  is used instead of  $\mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{L}$  with the verb  $\mathcal{L}$ . The postposition  $\mathcal{L}$  puts the infinitive  $\mathcal{L}$  into the oblique.

#### (literally: There are twenty minutes in the striking of ten.)

To state that something will occur or take place at a certain time, the postposition  $\downarrow$  is used for "at," when a specific number of minutes is mentioned. With other time expressions involving complete hours (or fractions of hours), the postposition is generally not explicitly used but implied. Consequently the past participle of  $\checkmark$  is used in its oblique form, i.e.,  $\succeq$ . Example:

The train will depart at ten o'clock.

The train will depart at one o'clock.

(Note: past participles in above two examples are in the implied oblique)

ہوائی جہاز دس بنج کر پانچ منٹ پر پینچ رہاہے۔

The airplane is arriving at five minutes past ten.

The airplane is arriving at five minutes to ten.

To express a.m. or p.m., the time of the day is stated with  $\int$  if appropriate:

دوپر کو دو بچ آ بے!

Come at two p.m. (lit. two o'clock in the afternoon)!

Sometimes the possessive  $\angle$  may also be used in this construction instead of  $\oint$ :

Where were you going at ten o'clock at night (at 10 p.m.)?

To express exact time, the word مُعَمَك is used before the time expression:

Our little daughter wakes every morning at exactly 4 o'clock.

9.13 Reading and Translation Drill

Write out the following times in Urdu:

1.	1:00	11.	11:39 p.m
2.	2:10	12.	12:40 a.m.
3.	3:17	13.	1:43
4.	4:20 p.m.	14.	2:47 a.m.
5.	5:22 a.m.	15.	3:49 p.m.
6.	6:24	16.	4:51 p.m.
7.	7:25	17,	5:52 a.m.
8.	8:28 p.m.	18.	6:54 p.m.
9.	9:32	19.	7:55
10.	10:37	20.	8:58 p.m.

Translate the following passage into English:

میرا نام سیما ہے۔ میں کور نیل میں پڑھتی ہوں۔ کور نیل بہت خوبصورت یو نیور سلی ہے۔ بھر کو کور نیل بہت پیند ہے۔ میرا خاندان بھی نیو یارک میں رہتا ہے۔ میرے والد صاحب پروفیسر ہیں اور میری والدہ گھر میں کام کرتی ہیں۔ میرےماں باپ ہر سال پاکستان جاتے ہیں گمر میں اُن کے ساتھ خہیں جا سکتی کیو تکہ میں اِسٹوڈیٹ ہوں اور میں ہر وقت مصروف رہتی ہوں۔ بھے آن بھی بہت پڑھنا ہے۔ پڑھ کر ایک مضمون لکھنا ہے۔ مضمون لکھ کر میں دیوی کے گھر جاؤگلی ۔ دیوی میری سہیلی ہے۔ وہ بھی کور نیل میں پڑھ رہی ہے۔ وہ ہندوستان سے ہے۔ وہ اِس وقت کام کر رہی ہے۔ کام کر کے وہ میرے لئے کھانا پکائے شام کو کھانا کھا کر تین میں۔ میں کی ہیں۔ میری کو دال اور روٹی بہت پیند ہے۔ ہم ہر روز میرا پسند بیرہ پروگرام فرینڈز ہے۔ ایتھا، اب بیٹھے جانا ہے۔ خدا حافظ۔

# (Conversation) تُفتكو 9.14

## 9.15 Conversation Practice (1)

Create a dialogue with at least 8-10 sentences, using the following words and constructions:

متحکن فرصت کچر خوشی پیند بیند مچاہیئے + infinitive حچاہیئے + verbal stem

### 9.15 Conversation Practice (2)

Anil: Hello, Madhu, how are you?

Madhu: Fine, thanks. What are you doing here? Do you come to work even on Sunday?

Anil: No, I don't come every Sunday, but I have to do a lot of work today. Having done my work, I can play tennis with Ashwin.

Madhu: Yes, I also don't have a lot of free time. Having done this work, I have to

cook. There is no food in the house.

Anil: Would you like to play tennis with Ashwin and me? Playing tennis is good for health. We play tennis at five o'clock.

Madhu: I like tennis very much but I ought to study. Can I play with both of you tomorrow?

Anil: Yes, we can play tomorrow. I have to go. I am meeting Ashwin at ten minutes to five at his house.

Madhu: Take these. These are very good sweets.

Anil: These sweets are very good. Can I give them to Ashwin?

Madhu: No, you eat these. I can make more for Ashwin tomorrow.

### 9.16 Songs

(1

Glossary for Songs

flower bud (f)  $\hat{\mathcal{J}}_{\mathcal{H}}$  = understanding, awareness (m) glow, shine; freshness (m) ونكهار U. F. = youthfulness; adolescence (m) consent, agreement (m) الرار  $\hat{\mathcal{T}}$  = fervor, zeal, ardor (m) fault, blemish (m) ووث refusal, denial (m) الكار intoxicating; stupefying; perplexing جب قرار = restless, uneasy, anxious arm; sleeve (f) = بانهم confidence, trust (m) = إعتبار desire, wish (f) تمتا to hold; to seize تفامنا disreputable, infamous بدنام promise (m) = وعده my beloved (Persian) جانم My = spring season (f)

#### 9.17 Vocabulary

to call/invite	비나
to come out, to arise; to depart	إنكارنا
to depart, to set out	روانہ ہوتا
cough (f)	کھانٹی
to enter (formal Urdu)	تشريف لانا
essay/composition (m)	مضمون
fever; wrath; steam (m)	بخار
girlfriend (for girls)	مسهيلي
hand (m)	باتحص
happiness (f)	ئوشى
hour (m)	كهنثا

intention (m)	أدحر، إدحر إراده
intoxicating	مت
late	ويے
leisure; free time (f)	فرحت
medicine (f)	دوا، دوائی
pleasing	پيند
poor thing/fellow (f/m)	بیچارہ/ بیچار ک خامئوش
quiet/silent	خامتوش
to sell	نچن
to send	فيجيجنا
shirt (f)	فميض
to sit down (formal Urdu)	تشريف ركهنا
sixty	ساٹھ
some, few; scanty, little; less	تھوڑا
stroll, walk, tour (f)	r.
to stroll, to take a walk, to tour	یر ک
tiredness (f)	تتحكن
voice, sound, noise (f)	آواز
to wake up/rise	آواز أٹھنا/جاگنا دھونا
to wash	وهونا
worry (f. or m.)	قکر

### Chapter 10

## 10.1 The Verb by, "To Know"

The verb , the generic form of the verb "to know," is used in the following instances:

When the subject desires to express familiarity/acquintance with a person.

When the subject expresses knowledge about a general fact or an area/field or a skill.

When by is used in cases in which its object is animate or specific, then the object is marked by

 $\int$ . Remember that  $\int$  is a postposition and nouns/pronouns marked by it will be in the oblique.

میں سلمان کو جانتا ہوں۔

(subject -- object -- object marker ) -- verb)

I know Salman.

میں اس لڑکے کو جانتا ہوں۔

(subject -- object -- object marker y -- verb)

I know this boy.

میں اُردو اور ہندی جانتا ہوں۔

I know Urdu and Hindi.

In the last example, Urdu and Hindi are inanimate objects, so they are not marked by رو <u>Important note</u>: The verb جاننا should not be confused with the verb جانا" to go." The stem of جاننا is while that of يل جانا جول thus عمل جانا بول means "I know" while بان means "I go." Similarly, جانوں تا ال

## 10.1 Reading and Translation Drill

**10.1 Substitutions** 

یں (أن لڑكوں) كو جانتا ہوں۔ -1

these girls

that beautiful girl

your brother

his family

٢- كيا، وه (تم) كو نبيس جان تهيج؟

these players/athletes

those students

our daughters

this clever girl

۳\_ ہم (اُردو) نہیں جانے، مگر (انگریزی) جانے ہیں۔

Hindi	German		
Gujarati	Bengali		

names of these people their names

this famous poet that clever boy's name

## 10.2 معلوم مونا Construction

معلوم ، or "to be known," is a complex verbal formation, formed with the predicate adjective and the auxiliary verb ، المعلوم . وتا the construction معلوم ، وتا a restricted context. It primarily denotes knowledge of one specific fact or a group of ascertainable facts such as:

- 1. times of the day
- 2. prices of things

names of people, etc.

being a more expansive verb "to know," can often replace بانا, but the reverse is usually not possible. In معلوم جوتا constructions, the logical subject in English is marked by

### Do you know the time?

(Note: Although  $\tilde{J}$  is the logical subject in English, in Urdu it is actually the grammatical object, and  $\tilde{J}$  is the grammatical subject, with which the verb  $\tilde{J}$  agrees. The literal translation of the example above is: "Is the time known to you?")

کیا، اُس کو اُن کے نام معلوم ہیں؟

Does he know their names?

In the example above, the verb  $i \mathfrak{I}$  is in the plural because the grammatical subject in Urdu (i) is plural.

مجھ کو اِس چیز کی قیمت معلوم نہیں۔

I don't know the price of this thing.

In the past tense, the appropriate form of the auxiliary bis used:

مجھے معلوم تفاکہ انھیں فکر تھی۔

I knew that he was worried.

Similar to the  $\lambda e \tau$  construction, but perhaps more colloquial, is one that employs the word  $\lambda$ , meaning "trace, clue, hint; address." It too is used with the verb  $\lambda e \tau$  with the logical subject in English being marked by  $\lambda$  to indicate knowledge of a specific fact or piece of information.

آپ کو پتاہے کہ شالیمار باغ کہاں ہے؟

Do you know where is the Shalimar garden?

جناب، مجھے پتا نہیں!

Sir, I don't know.

ہمیں اس بات کے بارے میں کب بتا چلیگا؟

When will we (come to) know about this matter?

10.2 Reading and Translation Drill

تبين؟

## 10.3 The Verb UT and Knowledge of Learned/Acquired Skills

We have already encountered  $\mathcal{C}^{\mathcal{T}}$  in its meaning "to come."  $\mathcal{C}^{\mathcal{T}}$  is also used in constructions in sentences that denote the knowledge of a learned/acquired skill. In such a construction, the logical subject in English is marked by  $\mathcal{I}$ , thus becoming an object in Urdu. The verb agrees with the grammatical subject in Urdu or the logical object in English:

I know Urdu.

Do you know how to play sarod?

In the first sentence, the verb is feminine because its grammatical subject (Urdu) is feminine. In the second sentence, the verb is masculine because its grammatical subject, the infinitive  $\eta_{e}$ ,  $\eta_{e}$ , "to play sarod," is a verbal noun in the masculine. Note that the grammatical subject of  $\tilde{l}$ can either be a proper noun,  $\tilde{l}_{e}$ , or a verbal noun,  $\tilde{l}_{e}$ . Sometimes, the agreement of the verb will vary depending on the definition of the grammatical subject:

Do you know how to drive a car?

The grammatical subject in the sentence above is ألاك چلاتا,"driving a car," hence the verb is in the masculine.

### Do you know how to drive a car?

In the second example, since كارى is feminine, the infinitive چلانا can take on a feminine ending, and in that case so will the verb آنا. In the past tense, the appropriate form of the auxiliary is used.

Raj used to know how to dance.

## 10.3 Reading and Translation Drill

**10.3 Substitutions** 

- how to dance
- how to swim

how to cook

how to eat

۲\_ نرگس کو (کھنا) (آتا ہے۔)

will know how to read this book used to know how to cook Indian food used to know a little Chinese will know how to make yogurt

### **10.3 Translations**

Translate the following into idiomatic Urdu:

1. Do you know my favorite actor?

2. I know who Javed Akhtar is, but I don't know him (personally). He is a poet, isn't he?

3. Excuse me, sir, do you know where is the post office?

My grandmother (maternal) used to know the famous actor Dilip Kumar.

I know that Amitabh Bacchan is taller than you (informal).

6. Does Nargis know how to make spaghetti with Indian spices?

10.4 The Verb ليو چمنا, "To Ask"

میں اُس سے پوچھتا ہوں۔

I ask him.

(subject -- indirect object -- marker -- verb)

میں اس عورت سے پوچھوں گی۔

I will ask that woman.

(subject - indirect object -- marker -- verb)

The direct object, if animate or specific, is followed by بارے میں. If the object is not

animate or specific, the use of الحيار is optional.

I am asking him about Ali.

(subject -- indirect object -- marker -- -- animate direct object -- object marker ル ー - verb)

میں اُس سے یہ بات (اِس بات کے بارے میں) پوچھتا تھا۔

I used to ask him about this matter.

(subject -- indirect object -- marker -- inanimate direct object -- verb)

#### 10.4 Reading and Translation Drill

**10.4 Substitutions** 

(راج)ے پو پھیئے۔

That girl

These boys

My brother

Your clever friend

that girl your brother

that boy these doctors

that vagabond's home my father

Imran Khan's address that athlete

## 10.5 The Verb With and Je

The meaning of certain verbs changes depending upon the postposition with which they are

used.

1) + postposition - to mark the object means "to meet":

I meet (with) Ali.

They meet (with) those girls.

In the above sentences, the object (of meeting) is marked with *c*.

2) + postposition f to mark its logical subject in English means "to get, obtain, find":

I find God there.

اس کو وہ چزیں ملتی ہیں۔

He gets those things.

آپ کو بیه کتابیں کہاں ملتی بیں؟

Where do you get these books?

In the above sentences, the logical subject in English, that is the person/thing who is getting, obtaining, or finding something is marked by f. Note that the verb in all the sentences agrees with the things that are being obtained or found.

### 10.5 Reading and Translation Drill

معاف کیچیئے، اُس خوبصورت لڑکی کو آنگھوں کا کاجل کہاں ملیگا؟ معاف کیچیئے، ہمیں تاج محل ہو ٹل میں دو کمرے ملینگے؟ معاف کیچیئے، میری اِس سہیلی کوچائے کب ملیکی؟ معاف کیچیئے، نرگس جی، اس مست عاشق سے ملیئے۔ وہ آپ سے بہت پیار کرتا ہے!

Translate into Urdu:

- We are meeting those boys today.
  - Can I meet that famous professor?
  - They get all those beautiful things in India.
  - 4. What can you (informal) get in Canada?
  - 5. Those girls want to meet Shahrukh Khan.
  - 6. Where will I find medicine for this illness?
  - 7. Raj used to get sweets from this famous sweet shop.

10.6 The Verb with and f

When the verb デ means "to tell," the person to whom something is being said or told is usually marked by -.

میں اُن سے کہتا ہوں۔

I tell them.

میں اُن سے ایک بات کہتا ہوں۔

I tell them a thing.

When the object of is marked by J, then it means to call the object something, usually

something negative, but not necessarily so.

لوگ آپ کو کیا کہتے میں؟

What do people call you?

لوگ آپ کے ہونٹوں کو یاقوت کہتے ہیں۔

People call your lips rubies.

اس چز کو انگریزی میں کیا کہتے ہیں؟

What is this thing called in English?

10.6 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

1. Why are you telling me these things?

- 2. Tell him, "don't go there."
- 3. What is "love" in Urdu?
- 4. What does he tell your friends?
- 5. What does he call your friends?

#### 10.7 Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

 $\mathcal{V}$  can be used as a pronoun or an adjective and, depending on context, may mean "someone, any; approximately."

Somebody is playing over there.

When  $\hat{\mathcal{V}}_{\hat{\mathcal{V}}}$  is used as a pronoun in an affirmative sentence, then it means somebody, anybody, or a particular person.  $\hat{\mathcal{V}}_{\hat{\mathcal{V}}}$  as a pronoun subject is usually singular, hence the verb remains singular too. When  $\hat{\mathcal{V}}_{\hat{\mathcal{V}}}$  is used with *remains*, then it means nobody.

وہاں کوئی نہیں تھا ۔

Nobody was over there.

may also be used as an adjective, as in the following sentence: كونى

کیا، کوئی آدمی آ رہا ہے؟

Is some man coming?

Do you need any book from the library?

بر is رول The oblique form of رول is رول.

You ask someone concerning this matter.

Before specific numbers  $\mathcal{L}$  may also be used as an adjective meaning "some, approximately." In this case its oblique form is the same as the nominative:

The price of this shirt was approximately three hundred rupees.

Among these fifty apples, approximately four or five will be rotten.

Note: Following idiomatic usage, the noun سيب in the second sentence does not adopt its plural oblique form because a specific number -- بجاس -- precedes it.

, can also be used as an indefinite pronoun or adjective. Depending on context, it may mean "something, anything; somewhat; some, any; a little."

There is something over there.

 $\mathcal{J}_{\tilde{*}}$  as an adjective means some or a few.

وہاں پچھ لڑکے تھیل رہے تھے۔

There were some boys playing over there.

". When with نتبيس it means "nothing."

وہاں کچھ نہیں ہے۔

There is nothing over there.

When used with it means "anything at all, anything whatsoever; nothing at all."

Mummy darling, do you want anything at all from the market?

## 10.7 Reading and Translation Drill

Ĩ.

٢- گرميون يل اکثر اس بو تل يل كوئى نبيس بوتا ب-راج کی بلّی چیتا اکثر بیمار رہتی ہے۔ دتی میں ہوائی آلودگی (air pollution) کی وجہ سے کچھ لوگوں کی طبیعت اکثر خراب رہتی ہے۔ دفتر کے اکثر لوگ آپ کی پارٹی میں نہیں آ سکیلیے مگر کوئی بات نہیں!

Translate into idiomatic Urdu:

1. Do you need some work?

2. The poor boy is so sick on account of love that he eats nothing at all.

3. Can anyone take (use verb ( L ) this child to the hospital? He is somewhat sick.

- 4. Is there any need (ضرورت) to go to Delhi?
- 5. I think that at night you will not be able to get any taxis from the hotel.
- 6. Because of air pollution, I will not stay in Los Angeles.

**10.8 Fractions and Mass Measurements** 

#### Fractions

Fractions used to express quantity in Urdu are as follows:

quarter	پاد
half	آدها، آدھ
3/4	پون
1 1/4	سوا
numeral + 1/4	numeral + 1
1 1/2	<u>وَ بِرْمَ</u>
2 1/2	ڈھائی

numeral + 1/2

ساڑھ + numeral

(except for 1 1/2 and 2 1/2, see above)

Note: يون and يون are only used as adjectives with nouns and not with numerals.

[lit. quarter less than] is used before numerals to mean three quarters.

1 3/4 kilo mangoes [lit. quarter less than two].

Please cut 3 3/4 yards [lit. quarter less than four].

I want half a bread.

We want 3/4 cup of tea.

Note: ساز هے and مار can only be used with numerals and not with nouns.

I want 5 1/2 kilos of apples.

Do they want 1 3/4 kilos of meat?

### Review of Fractions from 1-4

1/4	پادَ	1 1/4	سوا	2 1/4	سوا دو	3 1/4	سوا تين
1/2	آدھ، آدھا	1 1/2	נילם	2 1/2	ڈھائی	3 1/2	ساڑھے تین
	پون						
	ایک						

Note: Numbers larger than four follow the same pattern to express fractions as for the numeral

3.

### Mass Measurements

In the previous chapters we have seen that mass nouns in Urdu (しり) are treated as singular entities just like their English counterparts:

This water is good.

Similar logic is followed for other nouns like (vegetables). بیہ سبتر کی ایچھی ہے۔

#### This vegetable is good.

The above sentence expresses the opinion that a specific type of vegetables, in mass quantity, is good. If you want to express that more than one kind of vegetables are good, then vit should be expressed in plural form:

These vegetables (different kinds) are good.

As far as specific measurements are concerned, the words used to express measurements

immediately precede the thing that is being measured.

One cup (of) sugar.

Two spoons (of) salt.

Note that Urdu disposes of any possessive postpositions that are the equivalent of the English

**10.9 Telling Time in Fractions** 

پون بجا ہے۔
ایک بجا ہے۔
ہوا بجا ہے یا سوا ایک بجا ہے۔
ڈیڑھ بجا ہے۔
پونے دو بے میں۔
دو بح بي -
سوا دو بج بين-
ڈھائی بجے ہیں۔
پونے تین بج ہیں۔
تين بح ين-
سوا تين بح بيل-
ساڑھے تین بج بیں۔

The pattern is regular from 3:30 to 12:30.

223

Write out the following times in Urdu:

"of."

5:45 pm, 6.30 am, 7:15 am, 12:45 am, 2:30 am, 2:45 pm, 1:15 pm, 8:00 am, 1:30 am, 11:45 pm

10.9 Reading and Translation Drill

Answer the following questions in complete Urdu sentences:

10.10 Cardinal Numbers 61-70

(Conversation) تُعْتَلُو 10.11 يتابى (محمى سے): ميرى جان! كيا مجھے اور متحالى ميل تكتى ب؟ نہیں۔ کیا، آپ کو معلوم نہیں کہ مٹھائی آپ کی صحت کے لئے خراب ہے؟ :5 او ہو! پاں، مجھے یہ تو معلوم ہے۔ مگر میں کیا کر سکتا ہوں؟ متحالی مجھ کو :3.0 بہت پند ہے۔ كيا، الكل بيار بين؟ : 3 شہیں، یہ بیار شہیں ہیں۔ چار سال پہلے تمہارےانکل بہت مشائی کھاتے تھ :3 اور اس کی وجہ سے اُن کی طبیعت خراب رہتی تھی۔ دِن رات ہم سپتال میں ا الرائة سے میں گھر کا کچھ بھی کام نہیں کر سکتی تھی۔ اِن کے ڈاکٹر صاحب اب بھی کہتے ہیں کہ مٹھائی دِل کے لئے اچھی نہیں اور اُنہیں مٹھائی نہیں کھانی -20 ہاں، یہ تو بچ ہے۔ آپ کے ڈاکٹر کون ہیں؟ : 3; أن كا نام انوب سنكھ ہے۔ كيا، تم أن كو جانتى ہو؟ :3.5 بال، بال، میں أن كو اور أن كى بيوىكو اچھى طرح جانتى ہول۔ وہ دونوں زگن: بہت اچھے انسان ہیں۔ کیا، اُن کو معلوم ہے کہ میں راج کی دوست ہوں؟ نہیں، یہ اُن کو نہیں معلوم۔ ایتھا بٹی، کیا تم کو گانا آتا ہے؟ :5 جى؟ ميرى آواز الچھى نہيں، ميں بچين ميں گاتى تھى مگراب ميں اچھا ناچتى ہوں زگ: اور بچھے کتھک بہت پسندہ۔ واه! کیا، تم البھی جارے سامنے ناچ سکتی ہو؟ :3.5 انکل آج نہیں مگر کل میرا پروگرام ہے اور آپ لوگ اس میں آ کتے ہیں۔ : 3; کل تو ہم معروف ہیں۔ میری سہیلی بہت بیار ب۔ اُس ے ملنا ب۔ ایتھا تمى: بٹی، گھر میں مٹھائی بہت ہے۔ تم یہ مٹھائی ہپتال میں کسی کو دے کتی ہو؟

# **10.12** Conversation Practice

Anil: Hello Usha. This is my friend Seema. We are going to buy paan for Seema's mother.

Usha: Yes, I know Seema. She studies with me.

Seema: How are you, Usha?

Usha: Fine, thanks. Anil, do you know how to drive a car?

Anil: No, I don't. But Seema knows how to drive a car. Where do you have to go?

Usha: I have to go to Shehla's house. She is very ill. But her house is very far and the bus

always (بميشر) leaves late.

- Seema: I know Shehla. She is a good friend of mine. Can we come along with you to Shehla's house?
- Usha: Of course. I have to buy some fruits for Shehla. Can we all go to the fruitseller's shop?
- Anil: Do you know the address of the fruitseller's shop?
- Usha: Yes, it is near that big hospital.
- Anil: OK, let's go after half an hour. Seema and I will be here with the car at 4:30 pm. Be ready!

## 10.13 Songs

(1

(1

# Glossary for Songs

e a lord, prince, governor (m) نواب	wave (f) = موت
f = season (f)	flow, flux, going (f) دوانی

season filled with intoxication جيون = انجرى رُت = season filled with intoxication (m)

song, melody (m) = نغمه

# **10.14** Vocabulary

address; hint, clue, trace (m)	Ç
to come to know; to find out	پتا چلنا
air, wind (f)	يتوا
aerial	بتوائى
air pollution (f)	يَوائي آلودگي
to be/become upset, angry	ناراض ہونا
birthday (f)	سالگرہ

to call (something a name) (use with )	کهنا
cup (f)	<u>ب</u> یالی
date/history (f)	そっち
to drive	چلانا
to drive a car	گاڑی چلانا
to find	٢Ļ
generally, often; most; many	اكثر
half	آدھ/آدھا
(numeral + half)	ساڑھے
kilogram	كميلو
to know	انناء معلوم بونا
life, lifetime; also age (f)	×
to lose	كھونا
manner, style (f)	طرح
minister (government) (m/f)	239
prime minister (m/f)	وزير اعظم
nobody	کوئی نہیں
nothing	لجھ نہیں
one and a quarter	سَوا
one and a half	<i>ديره</i>
owl; fool; stupid (m)	ألو

إجازت إجازت دينا بجانا قيمت مطلب
قیمت مطلب
قیمت مطلب ات
مطلب ات
-
ياق
سوال
پونے
ž
كوتى
B.
بات
گرارنا
<i>ş</i> ?;
いな
چینی
مبطحا
<u>ت</u> ير نا
طبيت
يون
E

two and a half

ڈھائی

### Chapter 11

# 11.1 The Interrogative

The meaning of کیا depends upon its location in the sentence. When کیا appears before the noun it is modifying, it can be translated as "what kind of." When کیا appears before the verb it can be translated as "how." Its oblique form کی is often used adverbially.

What kind of girls are those?

وہ کیے لڑکے تھ؟

What kind of boys were those?

How is your daughter?

وہ آپ ے کیے ملیگا؟

How will he meet you?

Note that , when not being used adverbially, acts as a marked adjective and agrees in number

and gender with the noun it modifies.

## 11.1 Reading and Translation Drill

یہ کیسی سنزی ہے؟ یہ کیسا شہر ہے؟ وہ کیسے لوگ تھے؟ وہ کیسی قالینیں تھیں؟

whow much, how many," like کیا, acts like a marked adjective and agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies.

How many girls are in your class?

How many patients were there in the hospital?

How big is their house?

can also be used in an exclamatory manner.

Their house is so big!

# 11.2 Reading and Translation Drill

11.3 Expressing "To Have"

Urdu does not have the verb equivalent of the English "to have." Instead, Urdu uses three different constructions to convey the corresponding meaning of the English "to have." These constructions depend on the nature of the object possessed.

1. Expressing human relationships, legal ownership, and parts of the body.

In such a construction, the possessive adjectives or possessive postpositions  $\mathcal{S}$ ,  $\mathcal{S}$  are used with the logical subject in English. The appropriate form of the verb  $\mathfrak{ls}$  (in present, past, or future tenses) agrees with the object being possessed. For example:

ميرے دو لڑے ييں۔

I have two boys.

(possessive adjective -- object of possession -- verb)

میری دس أنگلیاں ہیں۔

I have ten fingers.

یچارے لڑکے کا کوئی نہیں ہے۔

The poor boy has no one.

أس آدمي كا ايك گھرتھا ۔

That man had a house.

الگلے سال حسین کی بھی ہوی ہو گی۔

Next year Hussein too will have a wife.

11.3 Reading and Translation Drill (1)

## 2. Expressing possession of material, movable objects.

In order to express possession of material, movable objects, the postposition  $\int \int \int \sigma$  "near" is used with nouns or pronouns representing the logical subject in English. The verb  $\mathcal{H}$ , in all its tenses, agrees with the object being possessed. Note that several pronouns adopt their

That woman has a lot of money.

(logical subject in English -- ン リー -- object of possession -- verb)

کیا، آپ کے پاس سے چزیں بیں؟

Do you have these things?

I only had two books.

Tomorrow you will have sweets in the shop?

## 11.3 Reading and Translation Drill (2)

## 3. Expressing abstract possessions.

As already discussed in Chapter 9, the postposition  $\mathcal{I}$  is used with the subject in order to convey abstract possessions.

I have a lot of work.

He has fever.

We were worried.

أنہیں بالکل تر مت نہیں تھی۔

They did not have any free time at all.

ند سونے کی وجہ سے اُن کو تھکن ہے۔

On account of not sleeping, they are tired (lit. they have tiredness/fatigue).

کیا، آپ کو اِس چیز کی ضرورت ہے؟

Do you need this thing? (Do you have the necessity of this thing?)

Note: ضرورت is feminine, hence the possessive particle preceding it will always be . The expression is خرورت ہوتا x, to have need of x.

11.3 Reading and Translation Drill (3)

بچھ اِس بات کا بہت غم تھا۔ ہارے لڑکوں کو اُس کا بہت غم تھا۔

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. I have three brothers and one sister.
- 2. Do you (formal) have two eyes?
- 3. Bill Gates has a lot of money. People say he is the richest man in the world.
- 4. We will have a lot of free time. We should not spend it (いうう) in doing useless things.
- 5. They have a lot of work, but they ought to go there.
- Nargis will also need (ضرورت) to have her teeth examined.
- 7. The patient doesn't have a fever but has a cough.
- 8. Do you have a need for a lot of love in your life?
- 9. I was very worried about these things.
- 10. Excuse me, sir. Do you sell combs? I don't have one; I want to buy a good comb.
- 11. The landlord in this village has a lot of land and money, but he does not help the poor.

# 11.4 The Possessive Adjective

When the subject of the sentence is also the possessor of a noun in that sentence, then the declinable possessive adjective 21 is used:

میں این پروفیسر سے ہر روز ملتا ہوں۔

I meet my (own) professor every day.

She meets with her (own) daughter.

بھے اپنا کام کرنا جاہئے۔

I ought to do my (own) work.

ہارے لڑکے اپنے دوستوں کے ساتھ قتبال کھیلینگے

Our boys will play football with their (own) friends.

Note:  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{i}$  immediately precedes the possessed object and agrees in number and gender with the possessed object.  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{i}$  is also used to emphasize the possessor/owner of nouns. In such circumstances,  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{i}$  follows the possessive noun or adjective:

يه أى كى ابى يز ج-

This is his (very own) thing.

وائیٹ ہاؤس پریزیڈنت کا اپنا گھر نہیں، امریکن لوگوں کا گھر ہے۔

The White House is not the president's (own) house, it is the house of the American people.

11.4 Reading and Translation Drill

ہم کو ہمارے اپنے قلم پند تھے۔ أن كو أن كى اپنى كتابيل يستد نهيس تخيس-

# 11.5 The Reflexive Pronoun ;

 $\vec{y}$  is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to the subject of the sentence in a manner similar to that of the English "self" or "selves."

میں خود پڑھتا ہوں۔

I myself study.

وہ خود وہاں جاتے ہیں۔

They themselves go there.

11.5 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into English:

- We will eat with our friends tomorrow.
- 2. This is his (very own) idea.
- 3. Madonna herself is singing tonight.
- 4. Do you (informal) yourself study at Princeton?
- 5. I used to go to India with my family every December.
- 6. We do not cook meat in our house.
- 7. Do you yourself know how to play the piano?
- 8. Abid himself was helping Nilofer.
- 9. Their life was so busy that they themselves could not rest.
- 10. In his childhood, the old man had his (very own) hair and teeth.
- 11. Please stop (prevent) your children from playing with the flowers in the garden.

# 11.6 Noun + Uls

Feminine	English	Masculine
پھل والی	fruit seller	لچل والا
سبز ی والی	vegetable seller	سبزى والا
جوتے والی	shoe seller	جوتے والا
تا کلّ والی	tonga driver	تأكيكم والأ

گاؤں والی	villager	گاؤں والا
گھر والی	wife, husband	گھر والا
کام والی	one who does work, servant	كام والا
دتی والی	a Delhi resident	دتي والا

Many fruit sellers live here.

What does your wife do?

The newspaper man used to come to our house every day.

In some instances, the addition of the Us suffix to a noun may result in an adjective:

I like tea with milk.

11.7 Adjective + Uls

The suffix  $\mathcal{W}$  can be added to adjectives in order to avoid ambiguity or to lay emphasis. In such an instance  $\mathcal{W}$ , like the adjective to which it is attached, will agree with the noun it is modifying.

Please give me that red hat.

You would say this if you are pointing to the red hat as opposed to hats of other colors.

# 11.8 Postposition or Adverb + Ul

The addition of the Us suffix to an adverb or postposition transforms it into an adjective or a

noun.

Does he stay in the upstairs room?

She is the girl who was/is outside.

God (lit. The One Above) watches us all the time.

Please show me the sari that is underneath.

# 11.6-11.8 Reading and Translation Drill

# 11.9 Oblique Infinitive + 119

When the suffix  $\mathcal{U}$  is attached to the oblique infinitive it can be used in two different ways. In the first usage it indicates the performer of the action of the infinitive.

The fruit sellers live over there.

Where is your worker going?

Note that  $\mathcal{U}_{\mathfrak{I}}$  will decline according to the number and gender of the performer of the action of the infinitive. In the second usage the oblique infinitive used with the  $\mathcal{U}_{\mathfrak{I}}$  suffix is used to denote immediate future or actions about to happen or take place. In such cases, the conjugated form of  $\mathcal{U}_{\mathfrak{I}}$  follows the  $\mathcal{U}_{\mathfrak{I}}$  suffix. The suffix will agree in number and gender with the subject.

1 am about to go to India.

## She is about to work.

Note: In the last example above there is ambiguity in meaning. The sentence can be translated either as "She is about to work" or "She is a worker."

If the oblique infinite +  $\mathcal{U}_{\mathcal{I}}$  construction is part of a phrase, it is best translated in English as a relative clause, beginning with "who," "which," or "that" as may be appropriate:

اس ہوائی جہاز میں بنگلا دلیش جانے والے لوگ تھے۔

In this airplane there were people who were going to Bangladesh.

He thinks that the health of a person who eats meat is generally not good.

## **11.9 Reading and Translation Drill**

Translate into Urdu:

- 1. He is a Delhi resident and he doesn't like Mumbai. He ought to go back.
- 2. That fruit seller will not be able to sell shoes.
- 3. I am about to buy that white hat. Do you like it?
- 4. His family has money and they are about to go to Las Vegas.
- 5. Many workers will not be able to go to work tomorrow because they have the flu.
- 6. They are about to sell their beautiful house in Lahore.
- 7. There is a lot more heat and sunshine in the big room that is upstairs.
- 8. The woman who drives the red car used to live in that big red house.
- 9. The train from New York will be arriving late. It is about to leave New York now.

## 11.10 Cardinal Numbers 71-80

ال المجتر ۲۲ بیتر ۲۷ تیجتر ۲۷ چومتر ۲۵ میچیتر ۲۹ میتر(ستتر) ۲۹ انجار ۲۹ ایتی

(Conversation) گفتگو 11.11

تم کیسی ہو؟ کیا، تم اپنے دوستوں کے ساتھ سنیما نہیں جا رہی ہو؟	15:
نہیں راج۔ آج میری طبیعت فراب ہے۔ بچھے بہت کھانی اور بُخار ہے۔	زگس:
کل رات کو میرے پیٹ میں درد بھی تھا۔	
کیا، تم ہپتال چلنا چاہتی ہو؟	راج:
ہاں مگر آج مجھے بہت کام ہے۔ کل جاد تگی۔	زگس:
تم کتنی پاگل ہو!کل تو میں تمہارے ساتھ نہیں چل سکونگا۔ آج میرے پاس گاڑک	いる:
ہے اور بچھے قرصت بھی ہے۔	
ہاں، باں، میں خود جانا چاہتی ہوں۔ مگر بچھے فرصت نہیں۔ بہت کام ہے۔	زگس:
تم إس حالت ميں كام كرنے والى ہو؟ ميں پچھ سننا شہيں چاہتا۔ ہميں اب	15:
سپیتال جانا ہے! کیا، تمہارا کوئی دوست آج کام کر رہا ہے؟	
مجھے نہیں معلوم۔ ایتھا مجھ کو وہ کالے والے جوتے دو۔	زگس:
(راج اور نر سمس جیتال جاتے ہیں۔)	
یہ نیا ہپتال کتنا شدر ہے! یہاں کتنے مریض رہ کیتے ہیں؟	راج:
کوئی دو سو۔ ایتھا، یہاں گاڑی روکو۔ میں زیادہ دور نہیں چل سکتی۔	زگس:
ٹھیک ہے۔ میں تمہارے بیچھے آتا ہوں۔	15:
(راج اور نرگس، ڈاکٹر کے دفتر میں۔)	
تمستے زگس جی۔ کیا حال ہے؟	داكثر:
میر کی طبیعت دو دن سے ٹھیک نہیں۔ کھانٹی، بُخار اور پیٹ میں بھی درد	زگس:
میرے خیال میں فلو ہے۔ کیا، آپ کوکل رات کو درد کے ساتھ وست آ	ڈاکٹر:

seci : 3; بال- پيٹ ميں بہت درو تھا۔ اب ذرا بہتر ہے۔ اپھا۔ آپ اپنے خون، باخانے اور پیشاب کا معاینہ کرائے۔ آج کل شہر میں داكم: إستوماك فلو چل رہا ہے۔ آپ كو اچھى طرح آرام كرنا جابئے۔ :17; یہ تو بہت مشکل ہوگا ۔ بھے بہت زیادہ کام کرنا ہے۔ کل دو انگریز میرے سیتال میں تھے۔ اُن کے پیٹ میں بھی بہت درد تھا۔ دہ ذاكم<sup>:</sup> بہت پریثان تھے۔ مگر آج وہ بالکل ٹھیک ہیں اور اِس وقت شینیں کھیل رہے ہیں۔ میں آپ کو بھی ایک اچھی دوائی دونگا۔ آپ خود ڈاکٹر ہیں اور جانتی ہیں کہ یہ خطرناک بات نہیں ہے۔ آپ کل تک بالکل ٹھک ہو جائینگے۔ مگر پیشاب، ماخانے اور خون کا متعالینہ ضرور کرائے۔ بان، ڈاکٹر صاحب۔ معاینہ کرانا ہے۔ ان کو کھانے میں کیا کھانا جاہئے؟ :7.1 نیہو کا شربت اور کیلے پید کے درد کے لئے اچھے ہوتے ہیں۔ لوگ کہتے داكم: ہیں کہ جاول اور دہی بھی منفید ہیں۔ بخار کم ہونے کے لئے ٹائیلول کیجیئے۔ زگن شكريد ڈاكٹر صاحب۔ ہم پھر ملينگے۔ زگس جي، آرام بيجير-زياده کام مت ليجير-**ڈاکٹ:** : 3; اپتھا، میں آرام کرونگی۔

#### **11.12** Conversation Practice

Doctor: How are you doing today?

Anil: I have a stomach ache and severe cough. I also have a fever. Since yesterday I have diarrhea.

Doctor: Please open your mouth. Does it hurt here?

Anil: Yes, a lot!

Doctor: I think you have the flu. I'll give you medicine. Drink a lot of water and get (literally, take) rest. Drink very little milk for two or three days. It is not very good for your stomach.

Anil: Do you have a daughter?

Doctor: Yes, her name is Reena. Do you know her?

Anil: Yes, she is in my class. Sometimes both of us study in the library.

Doctor: You ought to come to our house sometime. I have two sons and you can play tennis with them. When will you be able to come?

Anil: Thanks. Can I come to your house Friday evening? Are you busy at that time?

Doctor: No, no. We are free. Eat dinner with us. What would you like to eat? My wife is from Hyderabad. She cooks Hyderabadi food very well.

Anil: I like Indian food very much, but I don't eat meat. Also I don't like very hot food.

Doctor: We also don't eat meat. We are vegetarians. Don't worry. My wife only puts a little

pepper in our food. So we'll meet you Friday evening. Get (literally, take) a lot of rest.

Anil: Thank you and good-bye. We'll meet again.

### 11.13 Songs

۳) میرے من کی گنگا

Glossary for Songs

excuse (m) باند

to fade, to sink, to decline وطلنا

to break = توزيا

to abandon, to give up چموژ تا = تچموژ تا

wictory (f) جيت

 $J_{f} = loss (f); also necklace (m)$ 

enmity (f) = enmity (f) = heart, soul, spirit; mind; intellect (m) = River Ganges (f) = River Jumna (f) = union, confluence (m) = union, to torment

11.14 Vocabulary

to become well	ٹھیک ہوجانا
blood (m)	تحون
cold (illness) (m)	زكام
comb (f)	منگهمی
to comb	مسطی سنگھی کرنا
condition (f)	حالت
to cough	كمحانسنا
cough (f)	کھانی
dangerous	خطرناک

atient (m/f) 254	
in (m)	ورو بیمار / مریض
pring, children (f)	اولاد
e (f)	تاک
nth, face (m)	متحدامته
(m)	پیّر مُتھ المُنہ تاک
dlord (m)	
d (f)	زمین زمیندار/مکان مالک
to help x	xک مدد کرنا
to help	مدوكرنا
p (f)	مدو
r (m)	بال
go back, return	واپس جانا
(m)	نزلہ (قلو)
ger (f)	اُنگلی نزلہ (فلو)
(medically)	
nave something examined	مُعَانِيَةٍ كرانا
investigation (m)	
mination (medical),	معانتيته
hty	اشی
r (m)	دست آنا کان
nave diarrhea	وست آنا

to pour, to place, to put	ڈالنا
to be reduced	کم ہونا
to reduce	کم کرتا
rest (m)	آرام آرام کرنا
to rest	آرام کرنا
self (reflexive); oneself	تور
servant (m)	نوكر
sherbet (beverage) (m)	ثر بت
stomach (m)	پيە
to stop, to prevent	روكنا
teeth (m)	دانت
thief (m)	19.
toilet/excrement/stool (m)	بإخانه
town/city (m)	شر
until	تک
urine (m)	پيثاب
useful, profitable	شفيد
useless/unemployed	بیکار پریشان
worried	پریشان

## Chapter 12

## 12.1 Simple Past Tense

The simple past tense indicates an action that has been completed.

1. I went home.

2. I saw the movie.

In order to form the simple past tense in Urdu, it is essential to know whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. Intransitive verbs are those that cannot have objects such as verbs of motion. Transitive verbs, on the other hand, have objects (for example, the verb "saw" in # 2 above). In addition, there are a few verbs that are transitive in English but their Urdu counterparts are treated as intransitive. A notable instance is the verb U "to bring." In the same vein, there are a few transitive verbs in Urdu whose English conterparts are intransitive. The chart below should make these distinctions clear.

### **Common Intransitive Verbs**

to forget	تحولنا	to come	เา
to bring	ដោ	to go	ᆗ디
to be afraid of / fear x	x -	to speak / talk to x	xے بولتا
to fight with x	xے لڑنا	to live	جينا
to cry	رونا	to live	ريتا
to smile	خسكرانا	to get up	أطحصنا
to reach	پېنچنا	to rise / to awake	جاگنا

to be constructed/ become	t <del>i</del>	to climb	چڑھنا × سے ملتا
to bathe	تبيانا	to meet x	x ے ملتا
to dance	ناچنا		
Intransitive when object is no	ot expressed and t	ransitive when the object	is expressed:
	to lose	بارتا	
	to win	<b>جیتن</b> ا	
	to under	stand instant	
	Common T	ransitive Verbs	
to say	کہتا	to open	كھولتا
to ask	پو چھنا	to buy	کھولتا نحریدنا
to do	كرنا	to sell	ليچن
to see	وكيهنا	to sing	<i>5</i>
to eat	کھانا	to wash	و هو تا
to drink	پينا	to dry x	x کو شکھاٹا
to keep	د کھنا	to work	کام کرنا
to read	رکھنا پڑھنا لِکھنا	to clean	کام کرنا صاف کرنا ٹھیک کرنا
to write	لكحنا	to fix/repair	ٹھیک کرنا

Note: Urdu has a substantial number of verbs created by adding a "verbalizer" (usually  $i \int d$   $i \mathcal{H}$ ) to an adjective or noun to create a verb. For example, the Urdu equivalent of the verb "to work" is created by adding the verb  $i \int to$  the noun  $j \in i$ ; the verb "to clean" is similarly created by adding i f to the adjective d = 0. While constructions with  $i \int result$  in the creation of transitive verbs, those with  $i \mathcal{H}$  produce intransitive verbs, for example,  $i \in i$  "to be clean."

## 12.2 The Simple Past Tense of Intransitive Verbs

To form the simple past tense of intransitive verbs, the past participle is used. The past participle is formed in the following way:

> verb stem + 1 (masculine singular subject) verb stem +  $\leftarrow$  (masculine plural subject) verb stem +  $\bigcup$  (ferninine singular subject) verb stem +  $\bigcup$  (ferninine plural subject)

Examples:

tet "to dance"

stem: Et

Feminine Singular	Masculine Singular	Pronoun
نا چى	ناچا	یں
نا چى	ئاطٍ	Ţ
ناچى	ţ٢	ہے اوہ
Feminine Plural	Masculine Plural	Pronoun
ناچیں	<u>z</u> t	r
ناچيں	<u>z</u> t	7
ناچيں	z_t	آپ
ناچيں	تالچ	بيراده

If the stem of the verb ends in l, or s, then the consonant  $\mathcal{S}$  is inserted for the masculine singular past participle.

じ」 "to bring"		"to sleep" سونا
stem: U		stem: ۲
٤IJ	Masculine Singular	سويا
لاتے	Masculine Plural	2-9-
لاتى	Feminine Singular	سوتى
لائيں	Feminine Plural	سوتين

If the stem of the verb ends in  $\mathcal{S}$  then it is shortened in the masculine forms. No additional  $\mathcal{S}$  is added for the formation of the feminine past tense.

	"to live" جينا	
	stem: <i>3</i> .	
<u>جا</u>		Masculine Singular
20		Masculine Plural
3.		Feminine Singular
جيني		Feminine Plural

# 12.1-12.2 Reading and Translation Drill

An important intransitive verb, yi, has an irregular pattern of conjugation.

Feminine Singular

Masculine Singular

یں گیا

تو گيا

出市

آپ گے

وه گیا

میں گئی تو گئی تم تکمیں آپ تکمیں وہ گئی

Feminine Plural

بم كمي

تم گئیں آپ گئیں Masculine Plural



ېم گئ تم گ آپ گئے

03

260

## 12.3 Reading and Translation Drill

# 12.4 The Case of Cr. "To Be, To Happen, To Become"

The verb مونا mean to be, to happen, or to become. The past participle forms of تعمين على when it means "to be" are على على على المحص . The past participle forms of بونا when it means "to become" or "to happen" are :

	Singular	Plural
Masculine	توا	2 51
Feminine	توكى	ہو تیں

Study the examples below illustrating constructions meaning "I became happy," "You became

happy," and so on:

31.

100.01.000

Other examples of the use of the are:

Work took place there.

یہاں تماشا ہوا۔

A spectacle happened here.

# 12.4 Reading and Translation Drill

۳۱۔ چور کو دیکھ کر راج پریشان ہوا۔

وہاں پیچنج کر وہ لڑ کیاں بہت پریشان ہو تیں۔ ہارے ماں باپ ہاری وجہ سے پریشان ہوئے۔ چور کو دیکھ کر ہم زیادہ پریشان نہیں ہوئے۔

#### Translate into Urdu:

- Having seen my friend, I became very happy.
- Did you and your brother become ill in India?
- Those girls became worried after seeing that thief.
- 4. Did those bright students go to London?
- 5. What time did you (formal) wake up yesterday morning?
- 6. Did that man get up from there?
- 7. Those naughty boys climbed that mango tree.
- 8. Did they take a bath in this house?
- 9. I reached Mumbai this morning but my friends reached Mumbai last night.
- 10. What happened in Raja's house yesterday afternoon?
- 11. I became very embarrassed in front of my family.
- I don't think he became upset yesterday.

#### 12.5 Relatives and Correlatives

Relatives and correlatives are used to create clauses that frequently join two sentences which have a common noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb. These clauses agree in number and gender with each other. The relative clause usually precedes the correlative clause but this order is quite flexible.

(جو) آدمى كارباب، (وه) كون ب؟

correlative

relative

Who is the man who is singing?

relative correlative

Who is that who is singing?

(جہاں) آپ کا دل ہے(وہاں) آپ کا گھرہے۔

Your home is where your heart is.

The following chart lists the common sets of interrogatives, relatives, and correlatives:

Interrogative	Correlative of	Correlative of	Relative
	Proximity	Distance	
کیا/کون کن/کس :oblique	æ	89	З.
کن/کس oblique:	oblique: リルグリ	أك/أن oblique: أك/أ	جن/جن oblique: جن/جن
who/what?	this/these	that/those	who/that/which
کب	اب	ب	<u>جب</u>
when?	now	then	when
کب سے	اب ے	تب ے	جب ہے
since/from when?	from now	since then	from the time when
کب تک	اب تک	تب تک	جب تک
until when?	until now	until then	as long as
کیاں	ييال	وبإل	جهال
where?	here	there	where
كدحر	إدحر	أدحر	جدهر

in which direction?	in this direction	in that direction	in which direction
(whither?)	(hither)	(tither)	(whither)
كِتتا	ទរ	FÍ	ي <i>ين</i> ا
how much/how many?	this much/this many	that much/that many	as much/as many/the
			extent to which
کیہا	ايا	ويبا	جبيا
how, what kind of, in	like this, in this manner	like that, in that	that which, of such
what manner?		manner	kind
	12.5 Reading and	Translation Drill	
إ تحا-	میں ٹیکساس میں پڑھ رہ		
	ر،ی تقی۔	ب مح، ت ميل گا	جب آپ ناچ ر
	کر رہا تھا۔	ما، تب میں گھر صاف	جب وه پکا رہا تھ
	كر رہا تھا۔	به تقر، تب وه ورزش	جب ہم سو رہے
تھا۔	ر کوئی ورزش نہیں کرتا	کر رہے تھے، وہاں او	۲۔ جہاں ہم ورزش
	رہا تھا۔	ہے تھے، وہاں وہ کھیل	جهال بهم پڑھ ر
	ہیں تھا۔	ہے تھے، اُدھر اور کوئی	جدهر ہم جا رے
	ا چاہتے۔	ب، أدهر ہم نہيں جانا	جدهر توجا رہا۔

\_٣

جتنا کھانا میں کھا رہا ہوں، اُتنا تم کو کھانا چاہیے۔ جتنی روٹیاں میں کھا رہی ہوں، اُتن روٹیاں تم کو کھانی چاہیئیں۔ جتنے لڑے وہاں تھیل رہے ہیں، اُتنے تو میرے گھر میں بھی کھیل سکتے ہیں۔ جتنی لڑ کیوں سے تم پوچھ رہے ہو، أتن لڑ کیوں سے میں نہیں پوچھ سکتی۔ جس جگه آپ کام کر رہے تھے، وہ بہت خطرتاک تھی۔ -1

Translate into Urdu:

My house is in that direction in which you are going.

2. He who is my friend is not your friend.

3. The things that are pleasing to those girls are not pleasing to me.

4. The receipts for these bags are right there where you are looking.

5. In this country you cannot get the kind of carpets that you want.

I will meet you there where no one comes or goes!

7. Ever since Lata has come to America, she has become vegetarian.

8. Until her beloved comes back home, she will cry for him day and night!

Combine the following sentences using appropriate relatives and correlatives:

# 12.6 The Particles 2 and 5

We have already encountered the emphatic particle S. which means "also" or "too."

I too am going.

When is used in a negative sentence, it corresponds to the English "even."

Even I will not go.

 $\mathcal{S}^{\ell}$  must immediately follow the word it is meant to emphasize.

The enclitic particle  $\mathcal{S}^{i}$  is used to emphasize any element that precedes it. Used in this manner,

it may often not be easily translatable in English:

This year (emphatic) I will go to Pakistan.

This year I (emphatic/myself/alone) will go to Pakistan.

إس سال ميں باكستان بى جاؤنگا-

This year I will go to Pakistan only (emphatic).

This year I will definitely go (emphatic) to Pakistan.

Note that Us can sometimes correspond to the English "only."

In this house, only you work.

 $\mathcal{G}^{i}$  can also come between the noun/pronoun and the postposition that follows:

ير آپ بى كى كتاب ب-

This is your (emphatic) book.

or

یہ آپ کی ہی کتاب ہے۔

This is your (emphatic) book.

When  $G^i$  is combined with certain pronouns, it has a special form.

مجهى	-	S	+	8.
مجھی تجھی تہمیں تہمیں ایچیں انہیں	-	یں یی	+ + + +	بھھ بچھ ہم آس اُک اُن
چىيں	=	S	+	r
تهيں		ی ی ی ی ی ی ی	+	تم
St-		ى v	+	đ
ویک	-	ىى	+	09
ایی	-	ېې	+	JU
أسى	=	Si	+	ví
انہیں		S	+ + +	يان
أنهيس	=	S	+	أن

As far as adverbs are concerned, when  $\mathcal{S}^{i}$  is combined with them in a special form, they have a meaning different from the one they have when  $\mathcal{S}^{i}$  is written as a separate word:

right here	می <i>ی</i> ی	only here	يهال بى
right there	ويل	only there	وبال عى
right now	الجفى	only now	اب یی
right then	شبھی	only then	تب ہی

# 12.6 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate into Urdu using  $\mathcal{G}$  for emphasizing the italicized element in the sentence:

- 1. Those people have no free time.
- 2. You (informal) alone are my God.
- 3. In the big house, there was a small child.
- 4. I only was anxious/worried about the exam.
- 5. Give your heart only to us.
- 6. Sir, the carpet shop is right there.
- 7. Only here can you buy such beautiful flowers.

# كونيا 12.7 The Interrogative

The interrogative کوتسا acts as a marked adjective meaning "which one" and can precede both nominative and oblique nouns. The basic difference between کون (including the oblique forms and can be compared by the compared b

آپ کو کونیا پھل پند ہے؟

Which (out of all these) fruit do you like?

Which thing do you need?

#### 12.7 Reading and Translation Drill

#### 12.8 Repetition of Adjectives

When non-interrogative adjectives are repeated, the repeated adjectives take on an intensified

form:

وہ بُلبُل بیٹھے بیٹھے گیت گاتی تھی۔

That nightingale used to sing very sweet songs.

This sentence could also be expressed as:

Similarly:

In their house, there are very good things.

could be expressed as:

The repetition of interrogative adjectives conveys a sense of variety:

Where "all" will you go in Pakistan?

Who "all" lives in their house?

In order to repeat کون کو نسی کون کو نسی کون کو نسا the forms , کو نسا In order to repeat , کو نسا In order to repeat

Which are (all the) girls you like?

## 12.8 Reading and Translation Drill

ہم کو یہ خوبصورت چیزیں کہاں کہاں مل سکتی ہیں؟ ہارورڈ میں کون کو نسے مشہور لوگ پڑھتے ہیں؟ آپ اُس بازار میں کون کو نسی چیزیں خریدنی چاہتے ہیں؟

Translate into Urdu using repeated adjectives or interrogatives:

- 1. What "all" will you buy for me in the market?
- 2. He has very beautiful houses.
- 3. That woman has two very small children.
- 4. What need is there to buy very expensive clothes?
- 5. Whom "all" will you meet with in Delhi?
- 6. Where "all" will you go when you tour Pakistan?

### 12.9 Cardinal Numbers 81-90

۸۱ اکیای

JE AF

517.15

MA SUID

- ۸۵ چای
- ۸۲ چیای
- JE AL
- ۸۸ اتھای
- ۸۹ نواح
- \_ · ·

(Conversation) گفتگو 12.10

(نرگس، راج، ریشما، روی اور رشی۔۔۔ لکھنو کے ہوائی اڈے پر) راج: دیکھو نرگس، یہ کتنی کمبی قطار ہے۔ آج کئی ہوائی جہاز ایک ساتھ جا رہے ہیں۔ ہم کو اُس قطار میں تھ ہرنا چاہیئے ۔ وہ اِس سے چھوٹی ہے۔ نرگس: ہاں راج۔ آج گری بھی بہت ہے۔ کیا، تمہارے پاں ہمارے تلک بیں؟ راج: ہاں، ہاں۔ میرے پاس ہم سب کے تلٹ ہیں۔ نمک کلرک: کیا، آپ لوگوں کے ساتھ کچھ سامان ہے؟ نرگس: ہی ہاں یہ پارٹی بیکس ہیں۔ کلرک: یہ تو بہت بھاری ہیں۔ ایکسیس بیکیج دیتا ہے! نرگس: کیوں؟ ہم پارٹی لوگ ہیں۔ ایک سیس نو ضرور لا بکتے ہیں۔

Notes

Humayun, Mughal Emperor, died 1556.

عطّب ميتار: Qutub Minar; victory tower in Delhi built in the 13th century by the ruler Qutub ad-Din Aibak

نصرت فتح على خان : Nusrat Fateh Ali Khan, renowned qawwali perfomer; died 1997. الدسين اولياء : Nizam ad-Din Auliya, famous Muslim mystic of Delhi; died 1325. Amir Khusraw, a Persian poet who lived in Delhi, popularly considered to be a pioneer poet in Hindi; disciple of Nizam ad-Din Auliya; died 1326.

بر زا غالب: Mirza Ghalib, a prominent Persian and Urdu poet; died in Delhi in 1869.

#### 12.11 Conversation Practice

Anil: This is such a beautiful restaurant. Who is the beautiful woman who is singing?

- Sonia: The woman who is singing is Anuradha. She is very famous. She and I used to study together in college.
- Renu: Really? To which college did you both go?

- Sonia: We went to Amherst College. As long as I was in college, I used to listen to her every week.
- Renu: Did your parents live in the United States at that time?
- Anil: No, both our families used to live in India at that time. Only both of us were in this country.
- Renu: My family used to live in India five years ago, but now they also live here.
- Waiter: What would you people like to eat?
- Renu: The food here is very good. (use emphatic G)
- Anil: What "all" do you like here?
- Renu: Their dosas are delicious. I also like their tanduri chicken.
- Sonia: I don't eat meat. I would like a dosa and a mango lassi.
- Anil: I would like a plate of tanduri chicken.
- Renu: I will get a dosa too.
- Sonia: After we eat, we ought to go to a movie. Yesterday I was about to go to the new Madhuri movie but I did not have a car. My brother was going to New York.
- Anil: Yes, I like Madhuri very much. Is the theater very far from here?
- Renu: No, no. The theater is very near. But there is always a long line in front of the theater. For this reason we ought to go before 9 o'clock.

#### 12.12 Songs

 اے میری زہرہ جیں، تج معلوم نہیں تو ابھی تک ہے حسیس اور میں جواں بچھ یہ قربان میری جان میری جاں

# Glossary for Songs

forehead radiant as Venus = زيره جين

beautiful = حسين

sacrifice, offering

alley (f) = alley (f) = flower bud (f) = rejoicings, merriment (f)

well, tank; place for drawing water (m) بيكم coquetry, playfulness, flirting (f) = شوخيال elegance, smartness; curvature (m) باتكين (لئے چا) لئے = without الله = raw sugar, molasses (m) = to win, to conquer = art, skill (m) tamarind (f) = العلى sour, tart; harsh = کھی world (m) queen (f) = رانی promise (m) = وعده : j= season (f) 🗸 = ripe; perfect; strong, firm; pure intoxicating = متانى thread (m) = دهاگ life (f) = از ندگانی 5 = unripe, raw; rough; unstable; weak; brittle 🛱 = to pass, elapse

#### 12.13 Vocabulary

action/deed; mischief;	7کت
movement; (f)	
airport (m)	ہوائی اڈا
animal (m)	چاتور
answer (m)	جواب
artist (m)	فنكار
ashamed, bashful, modest	شرمنده
to be ashamed, bashful, etc.	شرمنده بونا
baggage, luggage, goods (m)	سامان
besides, moreover, in addition to	<u>ک</u> عِلادہ
brave, courageous	يهاؤر

capable, able, skillful;	تايل
worthy of (with oblique infinitive)	کے قابل
to cause or make listen, to tell;	شتانا
to narrate	
celebration (m)	جش
to climb	جشن چڑھنا
cold (weather) (m or f)	مردى (f) / جازًا (m)
to enjoy	مزه کرنا
fed up	בלו
to flee, to run away from	بھاگنا
fort (m)	تِلعہ
grave, tomb (f)	قبر
grave/tomb shrine of Sufi	אור
holy man (m)	
heavy	یھاری بھچن
Hindu devotional hymn;	بهجن
worship (m)	
historical	تاريخي
homeland (m)	تاریخی وطن آزادی دعوّت مقیرہ
independence, freedom (f)	آزادی
invitation; feast, party (f)	وعؤت
mausoleum (m)	مقبره
283	
200	

millionaire (m)	کروژ پی مدنار
minaret (m)	مبيتار
Mirabai a 16th century (?) poetess	ميراباتى
famous for her devotional songs to the	
Hindu deity Krishna	
mischievous	بثريد
mosque (f)	مسجد
mountain, hill (m)	يراژ پياژ
Mughal dynasty that ruled India from	مُعْل
the 16th to the 19th century	
nightingale (m/f)	ثليل
ninety	نۆت
place (m) (plural)	مقام(مقامات) پریم چند
Premchand prominent author of	پ يم چند
Urdu-Hindi narrative prose; died 1936	
prince (m)	شا <i>بز</i> اده قو <del>ر</del> ای
qawwali spiritual-mystical song recited	قوالى
by Muslim mystics (f)	
queen, empress (f)	مهاراتی قطار
queue/line (f)	
rain (f)	بارِش بارِش ہونا
to rain	بارش ہونا

to raise/nourish; maintain	پالنا
to protect	
receipt (f)	41
to return/come back	واپس آنا
revered person/ respected elder	يۇرگ
several; some; a few	کئی
skill, art, craft (m)	قن
to smile	شتكرانا
Sufi a Muslim mystic (m)	موفى
tree, plant (m)	1/2
to wait; to stay	تظهرنا
weight (m)	وزن
to work out, to exercise	وزن رزِش کرنا

## Chapter 13

#### 13.1 The Simple Past Tense of Transitive Verbs

Subjects of transitive verbs in the simple past tense are marked with the particle  $\angle$ . This particle puts the subject and any modifying adjective into the oblique case.

# 2 with Pronouns as Subjects

Although ن puts noun subjects into the oblique, in the case of pronouns only the third person pronouns go into the oblique. The third person plural pronoun "they" has a special oblique form with ن ا نيون - ن instead of the usual ا نيون - ن

I saw	میں نے ویکھا
You (least formal) saw	تونے دیکھا
You (informal) saw	تم نے دیکھا
You (formal) saw	آپ نے دیکھا
He/she/it saw	اس فے دیکھا
We saw	ہم نے ویکھا
You (informal) saw	تم نے ویکھا
You (formal) saw	آپنے ویکھا
They saw	انہوںنے دیکھا
Note: the oblique forms of the interrogative U	singular) and نے who" before" کو
plural).	

### Verb Agreement for Transitive Verbs

The particle  $\dot{-}$ , used to mark the subject of a transitive verb in the past tense, cuts off agreement between the subject and verb. Instead the verb agrees in number and gender with the object, if it is explicitly mentioned. For example:

I saw the book.

In the above sentence the past participle of the verb is in the feminine singular form because its object, "book," is feminine singular. In this tense the gender of the subject is irrelevant for agreement for transitive verbs. Similarly, in the sentence below, the verb participle is in the masculine plural form in agreement with the object "shoes."

میں نے آپ کے جوتے دیکھے۔

In case the object is not explicitly mentioned or is indeterminate, the participle uses the masculine singular form as its default form.

#### I saw.

In case the object is marked by  $\int (as, for example, is mandatory for direct animate or specific inanimate objects), then the verb participle also remains in the masculine singular as the particle <math>\int cuts$  off agreement between object and verb.

میں نے لڑکوں کو دیکھا۔

I saw the boys.

I saw your shoes.

#### I saw the book.

In both sentences above, the verb agrees with neither the subject nor the object because of the particles 2 and 3 which mark each of them respectively. As a consequence, the verb adopts the default form – masculine singular.

كرنا، وينا، لينا Three of the most commonly used transitive verbs have irregular past participles: كرنا، وينا،

كيا، ديا، كيا

کیتے، دیتے، لیتے اکتے، دیتے، لئے ک، دی، لی

کیں، دیں، لیں

Masculine Singular

Masculine Plural

Feminine Singular

Feminine Plural

Examples:

I worked.

(The verb agrees with object , masculine singular.)

اس نے چزیں کیں۔

He took the things.

(The verb agrees with object U, 2, feminine plural.)

مير والد في مجھ كمر و فرويتے)-

My father gave me clothes.

(The verb agrees with object ムズ, masculine plural.)

#### 13.3 Negating the Simple Past Tense

In order to negate the simple past tense, شبين is placed right before the verb.

ہم وہاں نہیں گئے۔

We did not go there.

میں نے اُن لڑ کیوں کو نہیں دیکھا۔

I did not see those girls.

Placing Variation after the past participle results in an emphatic negation:

اس نے کھانا کھایا نہیں۔

He did not eat the food at all.

### 13.1-13.3 Reading and Translation Drill

ار راج نے ایک سیب کھالی۔
سیما نے پچپاں سیب کھائے۔
انہوں نے اور اُن کے بیٹوں نے وہ اچھی مشائی کھائی۔
کیا، آپ نے کھانا کھایا؟
۲۔ میں نے اپنی گاڑی بیچی۔
۲۔ میں نے اپنی گاڑی بیچی۔
۲۰ اُن لڑ کیوں نے پچپاں چیزیں خریدیں۔
۳۰ کیا، اُن طالب علموں نے اپنے کپڑے دھوے؟
۳۰ کیا، اُن طالب علموں نے اُن کپڑوں کو دھویا؟
۳۰ نے اپنے کپڑوں کو دھویا گر ہم نے اُن کو نہیں سکھایا۔
۳۰ کیا، اُن ہوشیار لڑکیوں نے وہ اُن کپڑوں کو دھویا؟

Translate the following sentences into Urdu. Pay special attention to transitive and intransitive verbs.

- 1. Yesterday, my friend and I came from school at 4:00 pm.
- 2. Did you dance with your friend last Saturday?
  - 3. Having seen the ghost, all the boys were frightened.
  - 4. He went home with his brother.

- 5. When did you wake up this morning?
- 6. In my opinion, you did not do a lot of work.
- 7. Did that little boy smile? Poor fellow, he was very sick yesterday. He had a high fever.
- 8. At what time did they reach Islamabad?
- 9. I don't know about them but I reached Islamabad at 3:30 pm.
- 10. Did you (least formal) understand?
- 11. With whom did she dance? I don't know; there was a big crowd at the party.
- 12. I washed the clothes but I did not dry them.
- 13. Did you (informal) drink tea? No, I don't like tea.
- 14. They asked me a question but I did not reply (i.e., give an answer).
- 15. What "all" did you write in the letter?
  - 16. London is very expensive. I bought only two things.
  - 17. Where did the President of America give his speech last night? On T.V.?
- 18. His friend gave him a lot of things for his birthday.

20. We cleaned our house because my brother is coming home tonight.

Change the tenses in the following sentences into the simple past tense, inserting ن when necessary, and then translate them into English. For example: تم كل سنيما جايئتًا "We will go to the movies tomorrow" will become تهم كل سنيما لك Me went to the movies yesterday."

### 13.4 The Present Perfect Tense

The simple past tense is used to denote past actions that are completed. If these completed actions are connected to or have bearing upon the present, then the present perfect tense is used. *Simple Past Tense*:

وہ ہندوستان سے آیا۔

He came from India.

(Action completed in the past)

Present Perfect Tense:

He has come from India.

(Action completed but still relevant to the present)

In order to form the present perfect tense, the past participle of the verb is followed by the appropriate present tense of the verb  $i\mathcal{H}$  that agrees with the subject of the verb (in case of

intransitive verbs) or the object of the verb (in case of transitive verbs).

	Masculine	Feminine
I have come	يں آيا ہوں	میں آئی ہوں
You (least formal) have come	تو آيا ہے	تو آئي ہے
You (informal) have come	تم آتے ہو	تم آئی ہو
You (formal) have come	آپ آۓ يں	آپ آئی ہیں
He/She/It has come	وہ آیا ہے	دہ آئی ہے
We have come	م آئ <u>يں</u>	ہم آئی بیں اہم آئے بی
You (informal) have come	تم آئے ہو	تم آئی ہو
You (formal) have come	آپ آۓ ڀن	تپ تک یں
They have come	وه آئے بی	وہ آئی بیں

Note: for the feminine plural, the feminine past participle is not nasalized, e.g., عور تين آئى بين آئى بين

Intransitive Present Perfect Tense (verb agreeing with the subject)

Ali has gone out.

Sheila and Reshma have gone out.

Transitive Present Perfect Tense (verb agreeing with the object)

راج نے دکان سے کتابیں خریدی ہیں۔

Raj has bought books from the shop.

(verb agreeing with feminine object (كتاب

ز مس نے ریشماکو بنے کے لئے دودھ دیا ہے۔

Nargis has given Reshma milk to drink.

(verb agreeing with masculine object @193)

#### 13.4 Reading and Translation Drill

ا۔ سلیم وہاں گیا ہے۔ شہلا آج بی دِلّی سے واپس آئی ہے۔ میں ابھی نہیں جاگی ہوں۔ ہم بالکل عجیب ملک میں آئے ہیں۔ ٢ يد ۋاك ك آلى ٢ وہ ڈاک ابھی گاؤں ہے آئی ہے۔ مرے خال میں یہ ڈاک اُس چوٹے ڈاکانے سے آئی ہے۔ كيا، آب في اين آن كى ذاك ير حى ب؟ ۳۔ ہارے دوست نے دتی کی عدالت شہیں دیکھی ہے۔ کیا، تو نے لاہور کا ہوائی اڈا دیکھا ہے؟ میں نے ہوائی جہاز میں سفر نہیں کیا ہے۔ وہ و کیل ابھی ہوائی اڈے سے عدالت گیا ہے۔ أس بجرم نے لاہور کے قدرخانے میں کیا کھایا ہے؟ -~ أن بجر موں نے قدخانے میں گرم گرم روٹیاں کھائی ہیں۔ على فے اب تک جائے بھى تہيں يى ہے۔ راجہ نے شاد کے انظار میں جائے نہیں کی ہے۔ میں نے اپنے دوست کے انتظار میں کھانا نہیں کھایا ہے۔ تم نے أس عجيب شمر ميں كيا كيا خريدا ب؟

### 13.5 The Past Perfect Tense

As in English, the past perfect tense emphasizes actions completed at a given point in time in the past.

علی بھی آیا تھا۔

Ali too had come.

راج نے مٹھائی کھائی تھی۔

Raj had eaten the sweets.

As in the present perfect tense, the past perfect tense is formed with the past participle of the verb. However, instead of using the present tense of the verb i as an auxiliary, this construction uses the past tense auxiliary form of i and its variants. Again, the participle and its auxiliary have to agree with the subject of the intransitive verb or the object of the transitive verb:

ہیر اور را بھا اس گاؤں میں رہے تھے۔

Hir and Ranjha had lived in this village.

ہیر اور رابھانے ایک آم کھایا تھا۔

Hir and Ranjha had eaten a mango.

13.5 Reading and Translation Drill

شاہ جہاں نے تاج محل بنوالا تھا۔ \_1 اور نگزیب نے بادشاہی مسجد بنوائی تھی۔ کیا، حارج وافتکنن نے وائیٹ باؤس بنوایا تھا؟ نہیں، میرے خیال میں جان ایڈ مز نے وہ عمارت بنوائی تھی۔ آپ کی بہن نے کل رات کی دعوت کے لئے کیا بنایا تھا؟ \_٢ میری بہن نے کل سموت اور پکوڑے بنائے تھے۔ کیا، اس آدمی نے مزیدار مطاقی بنائی تھی؟ بی نہیں۔ اُس نے کچھ خاص مٹھائی نہیں بتائی تھی۔ ٣\_ ہم ہندوستان اُس وقت نہیں گئے تھے۔ کیا، اس مشہور اداکارہ نے وہاں کی خاص جائے کی تھی؟ جی نہیں، اُس مشہور اداکارہ نے آم کا خاص جو س (مینکوہلک شیک) پا تھا۔ بچھے کتی نہیں پند۔ میں نے وہاں پھل کا رس پیا تھا۔ ۲۔ یولیس نے جالاک چورکو پکڑا تھا۔ عدالت میں بج صاحب نے خطرناک تجرم سے بہت سوال پو چھے تھے۔ چالاک و کیل نے تجرم سے قیدخانے کی حالت کے بارے میں بات کی تھی۔ جن چوروں نے اس بینک کی چوری کی تھی، وہ بہت جالاک تھے۔ جب اس کو ان باتوں کی معلومات ہوئی تھیں تب وہ بہت شرمندہ ہوا تھا۔ كل منير في دعوت مي آفوالي بيوں كر ساتھ مذاق كيا تھا۔ بجین میں وہ بہاؤر آدی مالیہ پر چڑھا تھا۔ میرے پروفیسر نے اپنی زندگی کی کہانی ڈہرائی تھی۔

### 13.6 Cardinal Numbers 91-100

۹۱۔ اِکیاتوے ۹۲۔ اِلَادے ۹۳۔ برانوے ۹۹۔ چوراتوے ۹۹۔ پچھیاتوے ۹۹۔ اٹھاتوے ۹۹۔ اِٹھاتوے

297

چلو راج۔ بہت دیر ہو رہی ہے۔ لال قلعہ بہت بڑا ہے۔ ہم کو ہو کل جلدی واپس جانا ہے۔ کیا تنہیں یاد نہیں کہ ریشما،رشی اور روی ہو ٹل میں ہمارا اِنظار کر رہے ہیں؟

### **13.8 Conversation Practice**

Si

(1

Mother: Anil! You are watching a lot of TV. Did you do your work?

Anil: Yes, mummy. I did my work, washed the clothes, and organized my room.

Mother: Did you eat the delicious samosas that I made?

Anil: Mummy! I am not hungry. I want to watch TV. This is my favorite show.

Mother: No. First eat these samosas and then drink this milk. It has bournvita (chocolate) in it.

Anil: I don't like milk. You know that. I ate two oranges and an apple.

Mother: Milk is good for your health. Look - your brother drinks five glasses of milk every morning and all the girls like him. Sunita Auntie told me yesterday that your brother is the most handsome guy in school.

Anil: Really! I did not know that. I will now drink six glasses.

Mother: Just drink one glass right now otherwise the cow will not be very happy.

13.9 Songs

میرے گھر آئی ایک تنفی یری، ایک تنفی یری جاندنی کے حسین رتھ یہ سوار أسك آنے سے ميرے آمكن ميں كمل أشف يجول، كُنْكْنالى ببار و کھ کر اسکو جی تہیں بجرتا

(1

Glossary for Songs

اقرار = promise; agreement; acceptance (m) = road, path (m) = goal, destination (f) منزل = love; happiness, joy (f) هار = path, road (f)

little, tiny, young = شما

く デー fairy (f)

 $\vec{s} = chariot (m)$ 

پر سوار x = riding on اکمکن = courtyard of a house (m)

to blossom, to flower = كعبل أشهنا	
to hum, to sing softly = كُتُكْتَانًا	
to be content, to be satisfied بجرنا	

جیت = friend, lover (m) to shine, glow, glimmer چکنا

· U· - to be content, to be satisfied

direction (f) = وِثْمَا

### 13.10 Vocabulary

bad, evil, wicked	1ź
to be affronted, to feel insulted	نرا ماننا
beautiful	حسین
brain, mind, intellect (m)	دٍ الْ
to cause to be built, constructed	بنوانا
to have X built	x کو بنوانا
to cause to laugh	ذائ
clever, cunning, sly	چالاک
court (f)	عدالت
criminal (m)	13
crowd (f)	15
cupboard, cabinet (f)	المبارى
to dry	ستكھانا
facts, information (f)	معلؤمات
to fight x	x ے گڑنا تھولنا تھوت طَلومت
to forget	تحولنا
ghost (m)	كمؤت
government (f)	خکومت

to govern	خگومت کرنا بڑھنا
to increase, to enlarge, to extend	يو هنا
(intransitive)	
to cause to increase, enlarge	بزحانا
(transitive; causative)	
nterest (interesting) (f)	دِلچِپی
oke, wit; taste (m)	غراق
ourney (m)	سقر
to make a journey, to travel	سقر کرنا
uice, nectar (m)	رى
ate, a long while; a long period	43
of time, interval; lateness (f)	
to delay, to be a long time	د برکرنا د برے آنا
to come late	دير آنا
awyer, agent (m/f)	وكبل
o live; to be alive	جينا
o lose (a battle, contest, game)	بارنا
mail (f)	ڈاک
noon (m)	چا ند
noonlight (f)	چاندنی
Muslim ritual prayers (f)	فماز
to recite namaz	تماز پڑھنا
303	

oath (f)	2
to swear by x	فتم xکی فتم کھانا کھدلنا
to open	كھولتا
otherwise	ورثه
poetry; a couplet, a verse (m)	شعر
to play the role of x	t‡ x
prison, jail (m)	قئد خانہ
to recognize; to know; to	يبجإننا
perceive; to discern	
to repeat, to double, to fold	ذيرانا
sign, memento, souvenir (m/f)	دُهرانا زنشان(m)/ زنشانی (f)
special	خاص
speech, recital, statement (f)	تقرير
to give a speech	تقرير كرنا
splendid, stately, grand	شانداد
theft (f)	شاندار چوری
umbrella; canopy (f)	چھتری
village (m)	گاؤں
waiting, expectation (m)	إنظار
to wait for x	x کا اِنْظار کرنا
wonderful; surprising; strange	<u>چ</u> پ
	2

304

ł

### Chapter 14

## 14.1 L Constructions

is an intransitive verb which has a wide variety of meanings, depending on the context in which it is being used. The range of its root meanings include "to be connected to," "to be attached to," "to be fastened with or hung to," "to stick or adhere to."

His picture is hanging (has been hung) on the wall.

How many stamps for (literally, are attached to) a letter for India?

In addition to the above examples, there are many idiomatic expressions and constructions with , some of which are introduced below.

(A) In Constructions with

آج من يافي بج مج مح موك كلي-

I felt hungry at five o'clock this morning.

کیا تم کو علی اچھا لگا؟

Did Ali seem nice to you?

305

راج کولگتا ہے کہ نرگس کمی وجہ سے ناراض ہے۔

It seems to Raj that Nargis is displeased for some reason.

گرم چائے بینے کے بعد بھے ٹھیک لکیگا۔

After drinking tea I will feel better.

بجرم کو گولی لگی۔

The criminal was struck by the bullet.

can also mean "to require," "to take (time)," "to cost" in constructions where the logical

subject (in English) is marked by f and the verb agrees in number and gender with the object:

میں گھر دریے آیا کیونکہ بھے اِمیگریش کے دفتر میں دو گھنٹے لگے۔

I came home late because it took me two hours in the Immigration office.

It will cost a lot of money to eat in that restaurant.

How many hours will it take to reach Islamabad from here?

When  $\widehat{U}$  follows an oblique infinitive, it conveys the sense of the commencement or beginning of the action associated with the verbal infinitive. In this construction, the verb of action always remains as the oblique infinitive and the verb  $\widehat{U}$  agrees in number and gender with the subject. Although the "oblique infinitive +  $\widehat{U}$  construction" occurs in all tenses, except for the present and past continuous ones, it is common to find it used in the past tense.

راج ای جیتال میں کام کرنے لگا۔

Raj began to work in the same hospital.

ڈرکی وجہ ے، بچ رونے لگے۔

The children began to cry from (on account of) fear.

We will begin to work there tomorrow.

ہر روز وہ عورت دفتر سے گھرآ کر کھانا پکانے گلتی ہے۔

Every day that woman begins to cook after coming home from the office.

14.1 Reading and Translation Drill

ساڑھے بارہ بجے وہ پانچوں مسلمان نماز پڑھنے گئے۔ مائیکل جنیکسن کو دیکھ کرسب لڑ کیاں چینخ لگیں۔ لیچیئے، بیددوائی چیجیئے۔ آپ کو ایھی پچھ مِقوں میں ٹھیک لگنے لگیگا۔ نرگس کو لگا کہ رانح رادھا سے پیار کرنے لگا۔ مجھے تو لگتا ہے کہ وہ ایک بہت خطرناک چور ہے۔

Translate into idiomatic Urdu:

- 1. We are (feeling) very hungry. We have to eat now.
- 2. What all seemed beautiful to you in Agra?
- 3. All my friends began to go home.
- 4. How long (lit. how much time) does it take to go by car from Boston to New York?
- 5. The girl began to laugh a lot after she heard the joke.
- The rich lady asked the washerman (رحوبی) how many days it would take to wash all the clothes.
- Excuse me, sir, can you tell me how much a ticket to Benares would cost?
- The boy was wounded in the head. (wound (f) = يوف ; to be wounded = يوف.).
- 9. It seems to me that in India mangoes are cheaper than apples.
- 10. I am not feeling well. I want to go home and sleep.

to be able "to finish" is an intransitive verb which is never used by itself. Like the verb "to be able to, can," it must always be preceded by the stem of another verb. In such constructions, يتجاب indicates the completion of the action denoted by the verbal stem which precedes it (i.e., finish doing something). Like the "oblique infinitive+ ""

except the present continuous and past continuous. Since it is primarily a completive auxiliary, it occurs most frequently in past tense constructions. Translations of "verb stem + بيكتا construction often incorporate the word "already" to indicate the sense of completion.

Raj had already read (finished reading) this book.

That boy has already drunk (finished drinking) his milk.

Our servant will finish the house work by three o'clock.

### 14.2 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate into Urdu:

1.	I had already finished eating when he came to my house.
2.	The mother asked her son, "Have you already read this book?"
3.	The student had already written his essay and given it to his professor.
4.	Have you already seen a movie in which Shahrukh Khan is an actor?
5.	When he had already left, then I remembered his name!
6.	When the teacher reached the school, the students had already gone home.
7.	When Shahrukh Khan had already left my shop, I recognized him.
8.	The naughty boy had already climbed up the tree.
9.	When Nargis and Raj arrived at the zoo, it was already closed (to be closed= じェ ジン),
10.	When the doctor examined me, the fever had already come down (use أترتا or
	A rei

### 14.3 The Oblique Infinitive + 2 Construction

The oblique infinitive of a verb in combination with the verb (z) is used to express the idea of allowing or permitting someone to do something as well as giving permission. The infinitive always appears in its inflected form while the verb (z) agrees in number and gender with the subject.

Let the sick child sleep!

میرے والد صاحب مجھے ایک گاڑی فریدنے دینگے۔

### My father will allow me to buy a car.

The oblique infinitive + L construction is considered to be transitive. Therefore, in the simple

past tense, the subject of this construction is marked with  $\overset{}{\doteq}$  with the verb  $\overset{}{\flat}$ , agreeing with the object.

They did not let the girl read the book.

(verb agreeing with object "book")

### 14.3 Reading and Translation Drill

می ڈارلنگ راج کے پتاجی کو زیادہ مٹھائی کھانے نہیں دیتی ہیں۔

Translate into Urdu:

- We will not allow our children to play outside in this cold. They can play inside the house with their toys.
  - When I go to Dubai, my friend lets me stay in his house. It is a splendid house with a pretty garden.
  - I have heard that India is a beautiful country. Let your daughter go to India.
  - His father does not allow him to stay outside after 11pm.
  - 5. Did you let the traveller see those photographs?

### 14.4 Compound Verbs

# (A) Verb Stem + Aspect Indicators: لينا، دينا، برنا، بيشمنا، دالنا

A compound verb combines the stem or root of a principal verb with the conjugated form of an auxiliary verb. Frequently, the auxiliary verb loses its original lexical meaning, serving instead as an aspect indicator that connotes a nuance or aspect of the action of the main verb. For instance, an aspect indicator verb may indicate the intensity with which an act was performed, its suddeness or that it was done foolishly. There are only a handful of verbs that can serve as aspect indicators; some common aspect indicator verbs and the nuances with which they are associated are listed below. It is necessary to keep in mind the following points concerning an auxiliary verb serving as an aspect indicator:

a) The aspect indicator verb, which acts in an auxiliary mode, loses its original meaning. For example, the verb  $\mathcal{U}$  "to take" when used as an aspect indicator no longer means "to take." Instead, it indicates that the action of the principal verb has taken place for the subject's benefit

or is in some manner directed toward the subject.

b) Only the aspect indicator verb inflects; the stem of the main verb remains unchanged. As auxiliary verbs, aspect indicators can be in any tense, except the continuous.

c) In the past tense, aspect indicator constructions are treated as transitive (i.e., subject will be

marked by 2) only if both the aspect indicator verb and the main verb are transitive.

d) Since there are no equivalents of aspect indicators in English, accurate translations are often

difficult without some elaboration.

### **Common Aspect Indicators**

1. البين, "to take": When الميني is used as an auxiliary verb with the stem of another verb, it conveys the meaning that the action has taken place for the subject's benefit or is in some manner directed toward the subject:

He read this book (for his own benefit).

The patient will drink the medicine (for himself).

2. (z), "to give": (z) as an auxiliary verb with the stem of another verb conveys the meaning that the action has been done for the benefit of someone other than the subject or directed away from the subject:

میں نے یہ کتاب پڑھ دی۔

I read this book (for someone else).

Rich people should give away their extra money to the poor.

3. الب "to go": بان may denote several aspects including the total completion of an action,

the transition from one state to another, or an action that is taking place as a process:

That man fell asleep.

Will you reach there by tomorrow?

The boys from the village ate up the spicy biryani.

4. じた, "to fall": This denotes a sudden or violent change of affairs or a sudden downward motion.

That boy fell down from the tree.

On hearing his talk, I burst out laughing.

5. بيشمنا, "to sit": This is similar to يرتا since it also denotes sudden action. بيشمنا

implies that the reasons for the action are foolish or senseless.

He lost his books.

The young girl cried (without any good reason).

6.  $\xi l \psi$ , "to pour, to throw down": Also indicates a violent action and further implies that the action has been completed.

Did you throw away that book?

(B) Verb Stem + th Construction

Not all auxiliary verbs in compound verbal formations function as aspect indicators. For instance, the verbs with and with are considered grammatically to be modals indicating, respectively, ability and completion. The verb y as an auxiliary verb also functions as a modal. It is used to underscore physical ability or capacity to perform a particular action to its completion. Stem + y constructions are best translated as "to manage to..." or "get a chance to..." They commonly occur in the negative. In the past tense, the subject of this construction is not marked by ...

We weren't able (could not manage) to sing this song.

On account of love, Raj cannot (manage to) sleep.

I regret that I could not manage to tell this truth in a timely manner.

Unlike the verbs سكتا and خَلَيَّا , the verb إنا can be used in a non-modal context, that is, on its own, in which case it means "to find" or "to get." In this situation, it functions as regular transitive verb, with the subject being marked with نُ in the past tense.

What happiness did you get from this work?

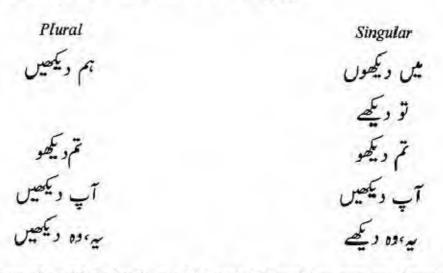
# 14.4 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following into Urdu using appropriate aspect indicators:

- 1. We have cleaned the house (for our own benefit).
- 2. Have you written the letter (for someone else)?
- 3. We are not hungry. Please eat these sweets (for your own benefit).
- 4. All his friends died (abruptly).
- 5. He lost all his best toys (foolishly).
- 6. Look (for yourself). I have nothing in my hands.
- 7. Will you be able to take all your toys in this small box?
- 8. The traveller came home and fell asleep.
- Nargis ought to have her blood tested (to get X tested = راتا = X).
- 10. The cunning thief stole all the traveller's money.
- 11. I understood what he had to say (use اسكى بات (completely).
- 12. Because of a bad cough, he could not (manage to) eat his food (use L).
- 13. He is so busy that he will not get a chance (use  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{j}$ ) to go to the hospital to see his mother.

### 14.5 Introduction to the Subjunctive

The subjunctive form of a verb is commonly used in situations expressing uncertainty, possibility, desire, or wish. In addition, it is used in a variety of other circumstances, some of which are described below. Subjunctives are formed in a manner similar to that of the future tense except the suffix  $\mathcal{J}$ ,  $\mathcal{J}$  of the future is dropped.



Unlike other tenses, the subjunctive form of the verb distinguishes number (singular and plural) but not gender. For the negative, the subjunctive uses the particle 2 usually placed before the verb.

Perhaps he is not able to cook food.

**Common Uses for the Subjunctive** 

1. Asking Permission (with first person)

میں و کیھوں؟

May [should, shall] I see?

بم جانيں؟

May [should, shall] we go?

کیا، میں سبر ی کاٹوں؟

May [should, shall] I cut the vegetables?

2. Suggestions/Indirect Commands/Reporting of Commands/Polite Imperative

آپ جارے گھر تشريف لائيں۔

Please come to our house.

Please eat some food.

Let's go to the market.

Tell father that he should not eat too many sweets.

3. Desire/Wish

May you live for 125 years (A common blessing that the elderly in South Asia give).

خدا آپ کو کامیابی دے!

May God grant you (give you) success!

May you remain happy, my daughter!

4. With specific adverbs and phrases denoting desirability, contingency, suitability, doubt or

possibility:

Perhaps

شاید وہ یہاں آئیں۔

Perhaps they may come here.

Je - if only/would that ...

کاش ہم روی شکر کو سن سکیں۔

If only we are able to hear Ravi Shankar.

St - so that ....

میں ممبنی جاؤنگا تاکہ میں سلمان خان کو دیکھ سکوں۔

I'll go to Mumbai so that I can see Salman Khan.

( ) حدا كر May God will that ....

خدا کرے (کیہ) وہ کل بہاں آئیں۔

May God will that he may come here tomorrow.

May God not will that our daughter cry.

.... God forbid (may God not will that)....

خدا نه خواسته آپ کو کچھ ہو۔

May God forbid that something happen to you.

it is appropriate that ....

It is appropriate that you sit here.

-let it not be that ....

ديکھو! ايسا نہ ہو کہ يہ چھوٹا لڑکا گر جاتے۔

Look, let it not be that this young boy falls down.

x - it is necessary for x to ....

مجھے چاہیئے کہ میں آج ہی یہ کتاب پڑھوں۔

It is necessary that I read this book today.

اراده ب که از x - it is x's intention that ....

ميرا إراده ب كه ميں كل تك وه كتاب پر هوں-

It is my intention that I read that book by tomorrow.

- it is possible that ....

ممکن ہے کہ ہم ناچیں۔

It is possible that we [may] dance.

-I want that ....

میں چاہتا ہوں کہ برا لڑکا ایک عظیم کھلاڑی بے۔

I want the elder boy to become a great athlete.

14.5 Reading and Translation Drill

خدا کرے (کہ) میں جلدی ایک کروڑی بن جاؤں۔

Translate the following into Urdu using subjunctives wherever appropriate:

1. May we see that?

2. Perhaps we may see Michael Jordan. All the famous people have come here.

3. If only we are able to study Urdu in India!

4. I would like to go to India so that I can work in the fields with the farmers.

May God will that you can come tomorrow.

6. It is possible that we may meet that famous artist tomorrow.

8. Tell our driver that he should not wait for us.

9. The guests are hungry. Shall we eat?

10. It is their intention that from today they will not drink alcohol.

11. If only all the people of this village were millionaires!

(Conversation) گفتگو 14.6

(راج، نرگس، ریشما،رشی اور روی ریل گاڑی میں) (دلی سے آگرہ جا رہے ہیں) ریشما: دیدی آج بہت گرمی ہے۔ آگرہ پہنچنے میں اور کتنی دریہ لگے گی؟ روی: تم ہر وقت بولتی رہتی ہو۔ نرگس دیدی سو گئی ہیں۔ اُن کواپنے شورے مت ستاؤ۔

# روی: ہاں، یہ کسان کتنی محنت کرتے ہیں۔ کاش ہم اِنتے محنی بن سکیں۔ راج تھیا، آپ نے تبھی ہل چلایا ہے؟

- راج: نہیں۔ مگر میں نے ایک بار ٹریکٹر چلایا تھا۔ مجھے بہت اچھا لگا تھا۔
- روی: میرا إراده ب که میں بھی ہندوستان میں إن تھیتوں میں کام کردن-
  - ریشما: مجھے بہت بھوک گی ہے۔ کیا میں یہ سموسہ کھاؤں۔
- روی: تم نے ابھی چار سموت کھا لیئے ہیں۔ پید خراب ہو جائیگا۔ اچھا، کیا تم یہ کامِک تبک پڑھ حکیسی۔
- ریشما: نہیں، میں یہ کامبک نبک نہیں پڑھ پائی۔ راج بھتا کیا ہم آگرہ جلدی پہنچ چائیگے؟ راج: ہاں، ہاں، بس تھوڑی دیر میں پہنچ جائیلیگے۔ وہ دیکھو آگرہ اِسٹیشن آ گیا۔ (راج، روی، رشی، ریشما اور نرگس تاج محل کے سامنے)
  - ریٹما: بیر کنٹی خوبصورت عمارت ہے۔ کیا، یہاں ہندوستان کے راجہ رہتے ہیں؟ نرگس: نہیں ریشما۔ ہندوستان کا کوئی راجہ واجہ نہیں۔ ہندوستان ایک جمہوریت ہے اور یہاں کے راجہ یہاں کے لوگ ہیں۔
    - روى: جمهوريت كا مطلب كيا ب؟
- زگس: جمہوریت لیعنی ڈیمو کری۔ اگرچہ یہاں پر کوئی زندہ راجہ نہیں رہتا ہے، یہ ایک مقبرہ ہے۔ یہاں پر مغل بادشاہ شاہ جہاں اور اُن کی بیوی مُتاز محل کی قبریں ہیں۔ راج: نرگس، کیا میں اِن لوگوں کو تاج محل کی کہانی سُنادَں؟

زگس: بال، بال- كيول نہيں؟ ضرور سُناؤ-

ران: ایتھا، سنو۔ شاہ جہاں پانچواں مغل بادشاہ تھا ۔ وہ اپنی بیوی مُتاز محل سے بہت پیار کرتا تھا جیسے میں نرگس ہے کرتا ہوں۔ مُمتاز محل کے مر جانے کے بعد، شاہ جہاں کو بہت غم ہوا اور اس نے بیہ مقبرہ بنوایا۔ بیہ مقبرہ سنگِ مر مر کا ہے اور دنیا کے عجائب میں سے ایک ہے۔

.

<u>Notes</u> Shakil Badayuni, Urdu poet and lyric composer, died 1970. اسابر لد هيانوى: Sahir Ludhianawi, Urdu poet and lyric composer, died 1980. اسابر لد هيانوى: Rabindranath Tagore, Bengali poet, winner of Nobel Prize for Literature, died 1941.

### 14.7 Conversation Practice

14.8 Songs

#### **Glossary** for Songs

to go wrong, turn bad; to break down لوع = gold (m) fellow-singer (m) = الم أوا  $\int \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{except} \text{ for } \mathbf{x}$ to accompany; to support = ساتھ دینا resplendent, glittering; flashy = بعر كيل التكيل = bright; showy; colorful; merry to praise = تعريف كرنا = the earth; earth, ground, soil (f) وهرتى ויש) = peace, security, safety (m) hatred (f) = أفرت to efface, obliterate, abolish = مِعَانا world, universe, earth (m) magic, spell; enchantment (m) الرئا earth, soil, dust; dirt, filth (f)

elegant, charming, smart; playful = fair, meeting, assembly (m) = beautiful, pretty; splendid to appear; to seem; to be seen وكمنا 5 = true chest, bosom, breast (m) سپينه heart; soul; mind (m) = مَن (m) = توري J= blue = sky; heavens (m) precious; dear; beloved بارى

### 14.9 Vocabulary

appropriate $last viceto break (transitive)last viceto break (intransitive)last viceto break (intransitive)last vicecheeks/countenance (m)\int c z z J z z z z z z z z z z z z z z z z$	agricultural field (m)	کھیت
to break (intransitive)لوغاto break (intransitive) $t_{e}$ فراcheeks/countenance (m) $t_{e}$ حارdarkness (m) $J_{e}$ حارdarkness (m) $J_{e}$ حارdemocracy (f) $\pi_{e}$ $\pi_{e}$ emperor (m) $\pi_{e}$ all down $t_{e}$ to fall down $t_{e}$ farmer/peasant (m) $u$ fat $t_{o}$ to finish $t_{o}$ to finish $t_{o}$ to fy; to cause to fly; $t_{e}$ to tease, to make fun of x $t_{e}$ God willing (may God will that) $t_{e}$ $d_{e}$ $t_{o}$ $d_{e}$ $t_{o}$ $d_{e}$ $t_{e}$	appropriate	منايب
cheeks/countenance (m)أرخبارdarkness (m)ائد هراlarkness (m)ائد هراdemocracy (f) $: : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : $	to break (transitive)	توژنا
darkness (m)اند هراdemocracy (f)تي تم تو تريemperor (m)هانت تريemptyعالemptyعالto fall downأررfarmer/peasant (m)ناسانfatالموto finishنارto finishنارto finishازرto fly; to cause to fly;ازرto tease, to make fun of xازرGod willing (may God will that)ازرthat)عار اند خواستthat)عار اند خواستadd i :خواستgreatمارhard work (f)تنا	to break (intransitive)	ٹونٹا
democracy (f) $x_{3}$ کو ریتemperor (m)هاشینشاهemptyقالemptyقالto fall downایرایراایراfarmer/peasant (m)نالfatامولاfatازارto finishازارto finishازارto fly; to cause to fly;ازارto fly; to cause to fly;ازارto tease, to make fun of xازارGod willing (may God will that)ازارخدا ند کرے (کہ)ازارخام عظیممیgreatمیhard work (f)عندخامعندخام خام خامعندخام خام خامعندfat work (f)عندto teaseعندfat work (f)عندtarعندfat work (f)عندtarعندtarعندfat work (f)عندtartartartartartar	cheeks/countenance (m)	ۇخىار
emptyظالto fall downايرا $2$ رايراfarmer/peasant (m)يراfatاموناfatاموناfatالراto finishالرto fly; to cause to fly;الرto tease, to make fun of xالرGod willing (may God will that)الرخم اند كرے (كم) > إنشاء اللهthat)خواستهخواستهخواستهgreatأمواستهhard work (f)تندخيرا ند خواسته	darkness (m)	اندجرا
emptyظالto fall downايرا $2$ رايراfarmer/peasant (m)يراfatاموناfatاموناfatالراto finishالرto fly; to cause to fly;الرto tease, to make fun of xالرGod willing (may God will that)الرخم اند كرے (كم) > إنشاء اللهthat)خواستهخواستهخواستهgreatأمواستهhard work (f)تندخيرا ند خواسته	democracy (f)	جمۇرىت
emptyظالto fall downايرا $2$ رايراfarmer/peasant (m)يراfatاموناfatاموناfatالراto finishالرto fly; to cause to fly;الرto tease, to make fun of xالرGod willing (may God will that)الرخم اند كرے (كم) > إنشاء اللهthat)خواستهخواستهخواستهgreatأمواستهhard work (f)تندخيرا ند خواسته	emperor (m)	شېنشاه
farmer/peasant (m)کسانfatاموٹاfatاموٹاto finishامرٹاto fly; to cause to fly;ارٹاٹاto tease, to make fun of xارٹاٹاto tease, to make fun of xانٹاثاء اللہGod willing (may God will that)مادا تہ کرے (کہ)، اِنشاء اللہdod forbid (may God not willمادا تہ خواستہthat)مادا تہ خواستہadd iہ کرے (کہ)مادا تہ خواستہhard work (f)تعلیممادا تہ خواستہمادا تہ خواستہ	empty	
fat الموتا fat الموتا to finish المراث to fly; to cause to fly; المراث to tease, to make fun of x المراث الراثا God willing (may God will that) المراث المراث المراث God forbid (may God not will فكدا ند خواست that) معظيم great مطيم hard work (f) عن	to fall down	يرتا
to finish لتحتم كرنا to fly; to cause to fly; to tease, to make fun of x الرانا ألرانا God willing (may God will that) غدا كرب (كد)، إنشاء الله God forbid (may God not will that) مقد اند خواسته deal in خواسته hard work (f) تعني	farmer/peasant (m)	کِسان
to fly; to cause to fly; to tease, to make fun of x God willing (may God will that) غدا کرے (کہ)، اِنشاء اللہ God forbid (may God not will that) great hard work (f) ک	fat	موٹا
to tease, to make fun of x God willing (may God will that) فُد اکرے (کد)، إنشاء الله God forbid (may God not will that) great hard work (f) خ	to finish	ختم کرنا
فَد اکرے (کہ)، إنشاء اللہ (God willing (may God will that) غُد اکرے (کہ)، إنشاء اللہ (God forbid (may God not will فُد انہ کرے (کہ)، مُن انہ فواستہ فعلم مُحد انہ فواستہ المعن (Arrow and that) وreat معظیم محت محت (Arrow and that) محت	to fly; to cause to fly;	أؤانا
dian (may God not will مند کرے (کم)، that) great hard work (f) کند کند کند کند کند کند کند کند	to tease, to make fun of x	x کا نداق اُڑانا
that) خُدانة خواسته great عظيم hard work (f) عنت محنت	God willing (may God will that)	خُدا كرے(كه)، إنشاء الله
great عظیم hard work (f) عنت محنت	God forbid (may God not will	خدا ند کرے (کم)،
hard work (f) عنت محنت محنت	that)	خدا نہ خواستہ
nalu work (r)	great	عظيم
hard working	hard work (f)	محنث
	hard working	<sup>محن</sup> تی

to work hard	محنت كرنا
henna (f)	محنت کرنا چنا، مہندی
to hit	بارتا
ifonly	کاش
living	زِ نده
lover	محلوب (m) المحبوبہ (f) سنگ مرمر
marble (m)	متک مرمر
once	ایک بار
perhaps	شايد
plow (m)	J.
possible	تمكين
to remember	ياد آنا
for x to remember	xکو یاد آنا
signature (m)	وستتخط
so that	تاكہ
sorrowful	غمناک
success (f)	تاکہ غمناک کامیابی کامیاب
successful	كامياب
to tease, to annoy, to torment	ستانا
to think	سوچنا
to throw	کچینیکنا دوران
time (period of); period (m)	دوران
330	

during this time/period	إس دوران ميں
toy (m)	تمجلونا
traveller (m/f)	شافر
wall (f)	ويوار
wedding (f)	شادى
whole, entire; all; the whole	111
wonder (m)	<i>بو</i> بہ
wonders (pl)	عجائب
museum	عجابب گھر
would that /if only	كاش
wound; injury (f)	چوٹ

#### Chapter 15

# 15.1 Condition-Result Clauses with I and J

Clauses stipulating a condition are usually marked with  $\int I$  "if" and frequently precede a "result" clause that begins with  $\vec{J}$ . Example:

If I (will) go to Lahore, I will bring cloth for you.

Although the word  $\int I$  at the beginning of the "condition" clause may be dropped at times, the J that marks the "result" clause is obligatory. Various verb tenses (present, future, past, or subjunctive) can occur in either "condition" or "result" clauses depending on the degree of certainty implied. The use of the subjunctive (as opposed to indicative tenses) indicates a greater degree of uncertainty or likelihood of fulfillment of a particular action. The examples below illustrate the usage of verb forms (subjunctive and indicative) in various sentences to convey degrees of certainty/uncertainty:

1. Purely hypothetical (use of subjunctive in both "condition" and "result" clauses, indicates high degree of uncertainty concerning both the condition and its fulfillment)

اگر میں ہندوستان جاؤں تو تاج محل دیکھوں۔

If I should go to India, then I may see the Taj Mahal.

2. More certainty than # 1 above ( "condition" uncertain; "result" certain)

اگر میں ہندوستان جاؤں تو تاج محل دیکھو نگا۔

#### If I should go to India, then I will see the Taj Mahal.

3. More certainty than #2 above (fulfillment of "condition" more likely or certain, "result" certain)

اگر میں ہندوستان جاؤنگا تو تاج محل دیکھونگا۔

If I go to India, then I will see the Taj Mahal.

If you are going to India, do see the Taj Mahal (for sure).

At times, the "condition" clause may contain the simple past participle of a verb. In this context, the past participle often functions as a future conditional, indicating a condition that may be

fulfilled in the future. Note: the past participle is not used in the "result" clause:

If I (ever) go to India (in the future) then I will see the Taj Mahal.

Improbable or contrary-to-fact conditions (*irrealis*) are expressed by using the present participle of the verb in both "condition" and "result" clauses:

Had we gone to India, we would have seen the Taj Mahal.

If the speaker wants to indicate a definite past time for conditions that are impossible to fulfill, then the past participle of a verb followed by the present participle of l may also be used in both the "condition" and "result" clauses:

اگر میں ہندوستان گیا ہوتا توتاج محل دیکھا ہوتا۔

Had I gone to India, I would have seen the Taj Mahal.

اگرہم ایک دوسرے پچھلے سال ملے ہوتے تو شادی کئے ہوتے۔

Had we met each other last year, we would have gotten married.

اگرہم آپس میں بات کئے ہوتے تودوست بے ہوتے۔

If we had talked among ourselves, we would have become friends.

<u>\*Note on usage</u>: ایک ووسرا used to describe action involving two persons; سیس میں used to describe reciprocal action among more than two persons

15.1 Reading and Translation Drill

اگر میں ڈاکٹر بنوں تو ڈنا کی خدمت کر سکوں۔ اگر آب امریکہ کے صدر بنیں تو دُنیا میں امن پھیلا سکیں۔ اگر وہ کسان نے تو ہرروز ہل چلا سکے۔ اگر تو پھل والا نے تو ہر وقت میٹھے میٹھے کھل کھا سکے۔ ۲- وه گھر آئیں تو سامان لائیں-تم إسكول جاة تو يدھ سكو۔ تولندن جائے گی تو بکینگیم پیلیس دکھے گی۔ ہم لوگ محنت کرینگے تو اِمتحان میں کامیاب ہو گئے۔ ٣- اگر ہم إى إمتحان ميں كامياب موت تو ڈاكٹ بن جائيگے۔ اگر آپ نے یہ دوائی کھائی تو بخار کم ہو جائرگا۔ اگر وہ برکتاب بڑھے تو اُس کو سب چزیں معلوم ہو جائیں۔ اگر آب اس پھل والے کے پاس جائیں تو میرے لئے آم طرور لائے۔ ٣- اگر آج برف ند يزتى تو بم بابر كميلتے-اگر این دهوب نه پرتی تو جم دریا میں تیر سکتے۔ اگر إتنا باني نه يرتا تو كير ب سوكھ حاتے۔ اگر سر دی نہ ہوتی تو بتح ماہر بھاگتے۔

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- 1. If I should go to that store, then I would buy the red carpet.
- 2. If I go to Washington, then I will see the White House.
- 3. If all of you come to my house, please bring food with you.
- 4. Had you played with the boy, he would have liked you.
- 5. If you play with that boy, he will like you very much.
- If you had been born in America, you would have become the president of this country.
- If she would have spoken Urdu well, she would have been the prime minister of Pakistan.
- 8. If you read Ghalib, he will teach you many things.

If you say so, I will cook the food.

10. Had you been able to write Hindi, you could have taught this class.

# 15.2 Expressing Presumptions and Suppositions with the Verb

Through the future form of the verb  $i \mathcal{H}$  a speaker can also express presumptions and suppositions. For example, the sentence:

وہ عور تیں کام پر ہو گگ۔

Those women will be at work. (future)

can also mean:

Those women must be at work. (supposition)

Similarly, the sentence:

دمان بهت شور ہوگا۔

There will be a lot of noise there. (future)

#### can also mean:

There must be a lot of noise there. (supposition)

Note the use of the English "must" in the above sentences indicates probability or likelihood rather than a sense of obligation or duty.

Presumptive and suppositional forms of various tenses can be formed by replacing the  $\zeta \sim \zeta_{z}^{*}$  auxiliaries with the appropriate future form of  $\zeta_{\mathcal{H}}$ . Examples:

<u>Present continuous tense:</u> وہ لڑ کے پڑھ رہے ہیں۔ Those boys are studying. suppositional form: دہ لڑ کے پڑھ رہے ہو نگے۔ Those boys must be studying. <u>Present tense:</u> دہ اِس لڑ کے سے بات کرتے ہیں۔ They talk to this boy. suppositional form: دہ اِس لڑ کے سے بات کرتے ہو نگے۔ They must talk to this boy. <u>Present perfect tense</u>: ران کام پر گیا ہے۔ Raj has gone to work. suppositional form: ران کام پر گیا ہوگا۔ Raj must have gone to work.

The following table provides a review of the future tense forms of  $l_{\mathcal{H}}$ :

Feminine	Masculine	Pronoun
مو تکی (مود تکی)	ए छे (ए रेंछे)	یں
ہوگی	вы	Ţ
ہوگی	Ln	خ
ہوگی	вы	~ /03
ہو نگی	ہونگے	r
ہوگی	Ln	Ž
ہو تگی	ہو تگے	آپ
ہو تگی	ہو نگے	æ /09

15.2 Reading and Translation Drill

## **15.2 Substitution Drill**

Change the verb forms in the following sentences so that they agree with the substituted subject or object.

كسين فے (كھانا) كھا (ليا ہوگا)۔ \_1

fruits

. . .

sweets

mango

yogurt

(رام اور شیام) گھر پر (ہو گھے)۔

Akbar's sister

Anita's brother

Radha's girlfriends

my cat

(زگس کی والدہ) شادی کی تاری (کر رہی ہو گگی)۔

Raj's father

our family

your mother-in-law

their servants

٣- (دو لاك) كميل ك الخ (باہر مح موظم)-

that handsome boy

those famous filmstars

our youngest daughter

his eldest son

# 15.3 Expressing Compulsion with the Verb じ

The infinitive of a verb employed in conjunction with  $t_{2}^{\prime}$  is used to indicate actions that the subject is forced, compelled, or cannot help but perform. The subject is marked by f. This construction is similar to the infinitive  $+ \frac{1}{\zeta}$  construction introduced in 9.5. There is, however, an important difference in the nuance of the two constructions. The former construction (infinitive  $+ \frac{1}{\zeta}$ ) is used for compulsion that is external to the subject while the latter (infinitive  $+ \frac{1}{\zeta}$ ) implies compulsion that stems from the subject, for example, from duty and obligation. Compare the following examples:

Hussein has to go to Islamabad. (forced by external circumstances)

حسین کو اسلام آباد جانا ہے۔

Hussein must go to Islamabad. (from a sense of duty, obligation)

For transitive verbs, the infinitive may or may not agree with object(s) in number and gender, but forms of  $t_{\chi}^{\prime}$  must retain agreement with object(s). Examples:

مُفلسی کی وجہ سے اُن کو اپنا گھر بیجنا پڑا۔

Due to poverty, they had to sell their house.

Tomorrow Shafique will have to wash the clothes.

For intransitive verbs and transitive verbs with no object, both the infinitive and form of  $V_{\chi}^{\prime}$  will be masculine singular. Examples:

I had to return home.

You will have to give.

(no object mentioned; infinitive and  $t_{\chi}^{*}$  in masculine singular form).

15.3 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate into Urdu:

- Raj had to invite Sunil to the wedding. 1.
- Mummy Darling will have to spend a lot of money in making the arrangements for Raj 2.

and Nargis' wedding.

- My car is bad. You will have to use my father-in-law's car to take the child to the hospital.
- Ravi has to consider this decision thoughtfully.
- 5. He had to give her this expensive present in return for her kindness.
- Indian brides must wear red saris at weddings, not white ones.
- The rich must end poverty in the world.
- They were so helpless that for four months they had to eat only potatoes.
- 9. Due to her helplessness, the poor girl had to agree to marry him.
- 10. We will have to turn on (t); the fan immediately! It is too hot in this room!

#### 15.4 Passives

Passives in Urdu are formed by adding the inflected form of the verb  $\psi$  to the past participle of a verb. The following examples illustrate the difference between active and passive sentences: Active sentence:

میں کیلا کھاتا ہوں۔

I eat a banana.

Passive sentence:

كيلاكحايا جاتا ب-

#### A banana is eaten.

In the active sentence the subject  $(\checkmark)$  is asserted and the verb agrees with it. In contrast, in the passive sentence, the subject is not mentioned and passive verb (past participle of the verb + the inflected form of + in the present tense) agree in number and gender with what was the

object of the active sentence -- "banana" (ليل). Thus, the grammatical object of an active sentence becomes in fact the subject in a passive sentence. The two sets of examples below illustrate that the passive may be created in a variety of tenses by inflecting the verb أي appropriately. Study them carefully, noting the agreement of the inflected forms of in various tenses with the subject of the passive sentence.

That thing was seen. Those things were seen. That thing is being seen. That thing will be seen. Those things can be seen. Those things used to be seen. The banana was eaten. The banana were eaten. The banana is being eaten. The banana will be eaten. The banana can be eaten. The bananas used to be eaten.

When passives are used in an impersonal sense, the verb is put in the third person masculine

singular form and no explicit subject is mentioned. Examples:

لکھا گیا ہے۔

It has been written.

- 다 다 나

#### It is said.

Re-inserting the original subject of the active sentence into a passive sentence:

If the original subject of the active sentence is to be re-introduced into the passive sentence, it is marked by the postposition —. Reinserting the original subject into a passive sentence occurs mostly in negative sentences, hence the construction is called the passive of incapacity.

Examples:

بجوت كيلا كهاما تنبين حاتا-

I cannot eat the banana.

(literally, the banana cannot be eaten by me.)

مریض سے دوائی پی شہیں گئی۔

The patient could not drink the medicine.

(literally, the medicine could not be drunk by the patient.)

The passive of incapacity differs from the L construction in the negative in that it implies that the subject could not perform the action for physical reasons.

15.4 Reading and Translation Drill

کل رمضان کی عید دهوم دهام سے منائی گئی۔ یہ مسلمانوں کا بہت بڑا توہار ہے۔ یرسوں ویوالی منائی گئی۔ یہ تنوبار ہر سالسارے مندوستان میں دھوم دھام سے منایا جاتا وسمبر میں کرسس کا توہارد هوم دهام سے منایا گیا۔ بر او میں ہندوستان اور پاکستان کی آزادی منائی گئی۔

\*  $\mathcal{U}$  = pronounced as "Lailaa"; the last letter is called "alif magsura."

Translate the following sentences into Urdu:

- All the food was eaten at last night's party.
- 2. The wedding will be celebrated with pomp and gusto at our house tomorrow.
- 3. Was my favorite song sung?
- The house can be built in three months.
- 5. The Taj Mahal was built in Shah Jahan's time.
- 6. The bride and the groom are being praised.
- 7. The poor farmers will be helped.
- 8. This Urdu book will be read at all universities in America.
- 9. Have the preparations been made?
- 10. Many beautiful flowers are being bought for Raj and Nargis' wedding.

#### 15.5 Passive Intransitive Verbs

In addition to the passive construction introduced above, Urdu has several intransitive verbs that are often, if not always, translated into English by using the passive. In many cases, the stems of these so-called passive intransitive verbs also have transitive counterparts. While the focus in the intransitive form is on the action itself or the result of the action, the emphasis in the transitive form is on the doer of the action. Examples:

Transitive form:	كھولنا	to open
Intransitive form:	فتمحظلنا	to be opened
Transitive form:	توڑنا	to break
Intransitive form:	ٹو ٹنا	to be broken

Note the "passive" character of the English translations of the intransitive verbs in the examples

below:

Transitive verb:

میں نے کھڑ کی کھولی ۔

I opened the window.

Intransitive verb:

کھڑ کی کھلی

The window opened.

Transitive verb:

حسین نے میرا گلاس توڑا۔

Hussein broke my glass.

Intransitive verb:

مير الكماس ثوث كما-.

My glass broke.

Complex verbs when formed with the verb  $t \mathscr{H}$  may also have a passive intransitive nuance to them in contrast to those formed with  $t \mathcal{I}$  which are transitive in nature. Study the pair of complex verbs listed below:

to begin, to get started شُروع ہوتا to begin, to get started تُشَروع موتا to be finished ختم ہوتا to finish فتم موتا to be prepared; to get تیار ہوتا to prepare

ready

to be born

for X to be at fault

پیدا ہوتا xے غلطی ہوتا

to produce, reproduce

to make a mistake

پیدا کرنا غلطی کرنا

Examples:

I begin this work (job).

This work begins/gets started.

Are you preparing food?

Yes, food is being prepared.

علی نے غلطی کی۔

Ali made a mistake.

Ali was at fault (literally, "a mistake was made by Ali").

Note: The last example, using the intransitive construction, implies that the agency for the action was somewhat beyond the subject's control.

#### 15.5 Reading and Translation Drill

۔ وہ لڑکی کام شروع کر رہی ہے۔ اُس لڑکی کا کام کب شروع ہوا؟ مائیکل جنیسن نے گانا شروع کرنے کے بعد ناچ شروع کیا۔ آپ وقت پر آیئے ورنہ فلم شروع ہو جائیگی۔

کیا آپکا دِل بھی چھر کا بنا ہوا ہے؟! دہ جوتے کہاں کے بنے ہوئے ہیں؟

Translate into Urdu:

- 1. A temple is being built at that place.
- 2. The wall of the old house broke. Who broke it? I don't know.
- 3. Hundreds of thousands of germs are being produced every day in this filth.
- 4. A lot of money was spent on building this road.
- 5. Finish him off immediately!

# 15.6 Cas a Rhetorical Particle

t as a rhetorical particle has two main uses in Urdu:

1. It can be a tag at the end of a statement seeking affirmation of a fact:

You love me, don't you?

2. It can be a tag at the end of a request to make it more insistent:

Won't you please hang my picture on the wall?

### 15.6 Reading and Translation Drill

**15.8** Conversation Practice

	(Sulochna and Shama are Nargis' friends who live in London)
Shama:	Oh Sulochna, did you hear that Nargis is getting married?
Sulochna:	Yes, Sunil told me. Poor guy, he had tears in his eyes when he asked me, "Sister
	Sulochna how will I spend my life without Nargis?!". I was unable to bear his
	'I started to cry!! I think Nargis (بجھے اُس کی پریشانی نہیں و کیھی گٹی!) distress.
	heart is made out of stone!
Shama:	Her foolish heart! A book can be written about Raj, Nargis, and Sunil. Sunil
	ought to stop crying. He must start studying. He is no longer 16 years old. He is
	now 20. Do you know what preparations are being made for Nargis' wedding?
Sulochna:	A lot of money is being spent on this wedding. I have heard that work is being
	done on Nargis' house. Expensive clothes are being bought. Nargis' mother told
	me to buy some clothes for her if I go to Lahore. Lahore has beautiful clothes for
	brides. So when I go to Lahore next month I will bring clothes for Nargis.
Shama:	You will bring clothes from Lahore? I think Karachi has better and cheaper

clothes. These days, Karachi's weather must also be very good. If you go to Karachi, you must go to Rambo market. You will be able to buy some good but cheap clothes there. I think Nargis will look so beautiful in a red sari.

Sulochna: It's good that we are talking to each other about this. But I don't like Karachi very much. When I went to Karachi two years ago, I saw a dead man on the road! As soon as I saw him, I started crying. I told my mother that I will never go back to that city.

Shama: Sulochna darling, don't live in the past (departed time). Don't think of dead men! I have seen dead men on the streets of New York and Mumbai! I know the governments of India and Pakistan need to do more to help the poor but you cannot provide the medicine for all the illnesses of the world. You are not a Mother Teresa!

Sulochna: Shama, I used to think that your heart has a lot of love in it. But perhaps it is made out of stone!

Shama: Oh Sulochna, you are always crying. Your heart is made out of salt. Forgive me, don't be upset with me. If you want to help the poor, go and work with them.
You will not be able to end poverty in India and Pakistan while sitting in London. Come, let's think of happy things...like Nargis' wedding. Do you want to sing a song with me? What's the latest song from Bollywood?

15.9 Songs

تجھے دیکھا تو بدجانا صنم پیار ہوتا ہے دیوانہ صنم اب یہاں سے کہاں جائیں ہم

Glossary for Songs

loyalty; faithfulness (f) وفا	hate; hatred (f) = تفرت
martyr; one who is slain (m/f) = شهيد	blood; murder; slaughter (m) خوان
riches, wealth; dominion; rule (f) = وولت	جز = dagger (m)
ž j = chain; fetters (f)	sword (f) = تلوار
المان= faith; belief (m)	long live = زِندہ باد
15.10	Vocabulary

to agree upon x	x پر راضی ہونا
arm, embrace (f)	x پر راضی مونا باتهه
arrangement (m)	إنتظام
body (m)	حن
to be born	پدا ہونا
bride (f)	پیدا ہونا ڈلہن ر ڈلہنیا
bridegroom (m)	<i>دُل</i> يا
to call x on the phone	x کو قون کرنا
to celebrate, commemorate	متانا
cure (m)	عِلاج
decision (m)	فيصله
details, explanation; analysis (f)	تفصيل
to dial the phone	فون ميلانا
distress, misery, anxiety (f)	پريثانی
dream (m)	
to dry (intransitive)	خواب سؤکھنا

to end, conclude (transitive)	ختم كرنا
to end, conclude (intransitive)	ختم ہونا
expenditure, expense (m)	C.j
	خرج كرنا
to spend, to expend (transitive)	ترینی مونا ترینی مونا
to be spent, expended (intransitive)	
fan; ventilator (m)	يتكھا
festival	نتوبار، تهوار (m) معيد (f)
filth (f)	گندگی
fork; thorn (m)	EK
germs (m)	A.1.7.
gift (m)	تخفه
healthy	صحت مند
in return for x; instead of x	× کے بدلے میں
life partner (m/f)	جيون ساعقى
melody	راگ (m) راگی (f)
middle	Ũ
mistake (f)	غلطي
party; invitation (f)	دعوّت xکو دعوّت وینا xکی دعوّت کرنا
to invite x	×کو دعوّت وینا
to have a party for x	xک دعومت کرنا
peace, safety (m)	امن تکوا
piece, morsel (m)	فكمودا

pleased; contented; agreed	راضی دے راضی ہونا
to be pleased with x	دے راضی ہونا
to agree upon x	x پر راضی ہونا
pomp and gusto (f)	xپر راضی ہوتا دھوم دھام
potato (m)	آلو
poverty (f)	غريجا رمقلسي
praise (f)	تعريف
to praise x	×کی تعریف کرنا
Ramadan, Muslim month (m)	رمضان
relationship / connection (m)	<i>ي</i> شتہ
river (m)	وريا
road (m)	راستر
snow (f)	برف
to spread (intransitive)	يعيلنا
to start, begin (transitive)	فشروع كرنا
to start, begin (intransitive)	شروع بونا
use, employment (m)	إستعال
touse	اِستعال اِستعال کرنا xکا استعال کرنا
to use x	xکا استعال کرنا
without	(کے) بغیر گواہ
witness (m/f)	<b>گواه</b>

#### Chapter 16

#### 16.1 The "Izafa"

The "izafa," or "addition," is a construction of Persian origin frequently used in Urdu.

Linguistically, the "izafa" is an enclitic, indicated by placing the subscript sign "zer," i.e.,

(also used to represent a short "i" vowel) after a noun. The "izafa" is used to express either (i) a

possessive relationship between two nouns or (ii) an adjectival modification of a noun.

(i) Possessive relationship between two nouns:

In such a construction, the "possessor" noun follows the "possessed one" and the enclitic "izafa," that reflects the relationship between the two nouns, falls in the middle and can frequently be translated as "of." Examples:

the daughter of the Nizam.

("possessor" Nizam = رفتر "possessor" Nizam = ( نظام =

جنگ آزادی

the war of independence

the government of America

In highly Persianized Urdu, geographical features are frequently written with the "izafa," with

the geographical entity preceding its proper name:

کوہ طور

Mount Sinai

(ii) Adjectival modification of a noun:

In such a construction, the noun is followed by an attributive adjective and again, their

relationship is reflected by the enclitic "izafa" that falls between the two. When translating such

a construction into English, place the attributive adjective before the noun. Examples:

foolish heart

ا کر چک

noble name

the Greatest Mughal

the [Indian] subcontinent

(continent = 1 small = )

## 16.1 Reading and Translation Drill

1. Read and translate the following couplets with the assistance of the glossary:

دِل ِنادان تحقی ہوا کیا ہے آبڑ اِس درد کی دوا کیا ہے

Glossary

foolish = Jelu

Glossary

فراق = separation (m) to pass off, to pass over = ثلنا to be entertained = بهلنا to recover = سنجلنا

غالب پھٹی شراب پر اب بھی تبھی تبھی ييتا مول روز ابر شب مامتاب مي

Glossary

to leave, to abandon

 $\mathcal{L}^{\dagger} = cloud(s) (m)$ 

Glossary

union, meeting (m) = وصال

 $M_{\pm} =$ friend, beloved (m/f)

2. Read and translate the following passage concerning the famous Indian movie, Mughal-e Azam (The Greatest Mughal)

tie,

(is

ایک غلام کی بے لی پر غور کرد تو شاید تم ہمیں معاف کر سکو۔

مغل اعظم میں ہندوستان کے بہت بڑے بڑے اداکاروں نے کام کیا۔ اکبر کا رول پر تھوی راج کپور نےادا کیا۔ سلیم ولیپ کمار تھے۔اور انار کلی۔۔۔ ہندوستان کی سب سے خوبصورت اداکارہ مدهوبالا۔ مغل اعظم آج تک ساری دُنیا میں دیکھی جاتی ہے اور بہت پسند کی جاتی ہے۔ ہم کو بیہ تو معلوم نہیں کہ بیہ کہانی تیچ ہے یا نہیں گر لاکھوں لوگ اِس فِلْم کو ایک تاریخی فِلْم سَبیحتے ہیں۔ سلیم اور انار کلی ہزاروں پیار کرنے والوں کے دِلوں میں زندہ ہیں: ' زندہ باد زندہ باد اے محبت زندہ باد!

\* Prince Salim (1569-1627); Mughal prince who on becoming emperor in 1605 adopted the royal title Jehangir (literally "world seizer")

\*\* Anarkali, legendary courtesan in the Mughal court, with whom Prince Salim fell in love
\*\*\* Emperor Akbar (1542-1605); considered to be the greatest emperor of the Mughal dynasty;
reigned from 1556 to 1605; father of Salim.

#### 16.2 Some Common Uses of Present and Past Participles

Thus far we have encountered present and past participles in the context of different verbal tenses. However, in Urdu, like in English, present and past participles can serve a variety of other functions such as adjectives or adverbs (as in "burning fire" "while walking" and so on). When employed in this manner, present and past participles are usually followed by the appropriate form of the past participle of the verb " $\mathcal{H}$ " ( $\mathcal{H}$ ,  $\mathcal{H}$ ).

1. Present Participle as Adjective

When used in an adjectival sense, these participles and the forms of " $c_{\mathcal{H}}$ " attached to them decline according to the case, number, and gender of the nouns they modify. Note, however, that in the case of feminine adjectival participles, the singular form modifies both singular and plural

feminine nouns. Examples:

a dancing girl	ناچتی ہوئی لڑکی
a singing boy	گاتا ہوا لڑکا
laughing actors	بنت ہوتے اداکار
playing girls	تحیلتی ہوئی لڑ کمیاں
shy bride	شرماتی ہوئی ڈلہن
moving bus	چلتی ہوئی بس

In many instances, the past participle of " by " may be omitted without affecting the meaning:

# میں چکتی گاڑی میں کتابیں نہیں پڑھ سکتا ہوں۔

I am unable to read books in a moving car.

2. Past Participle as Adjective

Whereas the present participle of a particular verb, acting as an adjective, conveys the progression of particular actions, the past participle as adjective connotes a state of completion or a passive state. Thus, at times, the past participle may convey a present stative sense. For instance: بيطي بول عورت would mean a seated woman (that is a woman in the state of being seated). In contrast بيطي بول عورت , with the present participle, would mean a woman who is in the act or process of sitting down.

dead man	مرا ہوا آدی
kept books	ر کمی ہوئی کتابیں
written letters	لکھے ہوئے خط
fallen things	بری ہوئی چزیں
a seated man	ببيضا بهوا آدمي

a standing woman constructed buildings

کھڑی ہوئی عورت بى بوكى عمار تي گررا ہوا زمانہ

a past time

3. Participles as Nouns

Occasionally participles, like adjectives, can be used as nouns. They may or may not be followed by the appropriate form of the past participle of the verb " $\mathfrak{rr}$ " ( $\mathfrak{fr}$ ). For example:

Wake up /pick up the sleeping one.

Don't bother the person who is reading (lit. the reading one).

A famous Urdu proverb also illustrates this construction:

What wouldn't a dying person do?

(In a desperate state, a person would not think twice about the consequences of his/her actions.) 4. Participles as Adverbs

Urdu participles used in an adverbial sense can often be translated into English with phrases beginning with "while" and often express incomplete actions. The adverbial participle phrase almost always appears in singular masculine oblique form. The usual word order in sentences that contain adverbial participles is: subject - adverbial participle - object - verb. Examples:

میں نے گھر جاتے ہوئے ایک خوبصورت لڑکی کو دیکھا۔

While going home, I saw a beautiful girl.

وہ لڑکی نہاتے ہوئے گا رہی تھی۔

While bathing, that girl was singing.

Watch the cut-up chicken walk!

(A note posted outside a trickster's stall in Lahore!)

5. Participle + 6

In order to convey immediacy or to give the sense of "as soon as" or "immediately after," the

particle  $\mathcal{S}^i$  may be added to the masculine oblique present participle:

The little boy started crying as soon as he saw the dog.

I will go there immediately after I finish eating.

6. Participle + et

Masculine oblique present participle combined with the word " وقت " connotes the simultaneity of two actions, that is, the action of the main verb taking place at the same time as the action signified by the participle + " وقت " construction. Example:

While driving (at the time of driving) a car, one should not speak on the telephone.

#### 7. Repeated Participles

Present participles can often be repeated to signify that the action of the repeated participle ends or results in the action of the main verb. Repeated past participles signify a past action resulting in a continuous or repetitive state. Examples:

میں پڑھتے پڑھتے سوچنے لگا۔

I began thinking while studying.

Poor Majnun died weeping.

جناب! آپ بیٹھ بیٹھ تھک جائیگے۔

Sir, you will tire of sitting (and sitting).

#### **16.2 Translation Drills**

Translate into idiomatic English:

ا۔ پولیس کو مرا ہوا آدی اس روڈ پر ملا۔
۲۔ آپ لا بسر بری جانے سے پہلے گھر میں رکھی ہوئی کتابیں پڑھیئے!
۳۔ غالب کے لکھے ہوئے خط آن بھی پڑھے جاتے ہیں۔
۳۔ اس لڑی نے کہو کہ وہ ان گری ہوئی چیزوں کو نہ انھائے۔
۳۔ وہ میٹیا ہوا آدی سگریٹ پی رہا تھا۔
۲۔ وہ کھڑی ہوئی عور تیں بس کا انظار کررہی تھیں۔
۲۔ شاہ جہاں کے زمانے کی بی ما تھا۔
۲۔ میں جوئی عور تیں بس کا انظار کررہی تھیں۔
۲۔ میں کری ہوئی چیزوں کو نہ انھائے۔
۲۔ وہ کھڑی ہوئی عور تیں بس کا انظار کررہی تھیں۔
۲۔ میں جہاں کے زمانے کی بی ہوئی عمار تیں بچھے ہو۔ پہلے میں۔
۲۔ میں جوئی عور تیں بس کا انظار کررہی تھیں۔
۲۔ میں جہاں کے زمانے کی بی ہوئی عمار تیں بچھے ہو۔ بی مردی باتوں کو یاد مت کرو۔
۸۔ تم گررے ہوئے لڑکی کو دیکھیے۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے سے آپ بات کر رہے تھے، اس کا نام کیا تھا؟
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے سے ای بات کر رہی تھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے سے سے ای بات کر رہی تھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے سے ای جاتے ہیں۔ ای بات کر رہی تھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے کے سے آپ بات کر رہی تھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے کے ای جاتے ہو۔ ای گرری می کھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے کے سے آپ بات کر رہی تھی۔
۱۰۔ کل رات جس ناچتے ہوئے لڑے کے ای جاتے کر رہی تھی۔

۱۲۔ وہ شاعر روتے ہوئے غزل لکھ رہا تھا۔ ۱۵۔ دودھ پیتی ہوئی یتی کومت ستاؤ۔ ۱۲۔ کیا ہر ساجن کو ٹوٹے ہوئے دل ایتھے لگتے ہیں؟ ۱۷۔ کام کرتے کو دیکھو!

Translate into Urdu:

- Give some sweets to the crying girl.
- Do not talk to the studying boy (the boy who is studying).
- 3. The laughing actor burst out crying all of a sudden!
- That man talks to dead people.
- 5. We cannot study while eating.
- 6. While studying (at the time of studying) one should not watch T.V.
- Ask Sunil's broken heart!
- Raj does not like shy brides.
- As soon as he came home, Mummy darling gave Raj some food to eat.
- 10. This is a book written by Reshma (lit. This is Reshma's written book).
- 11. Please give tea to the person who is singing (lit. the singing one).

# 16.3 Present Participle and Ly Construction

The present participle of a verb when combined with the verb  $L_7$  results in the iterative form. The iterative indicates the constant repetition of an action and is often translated as "keeps....." In this form both the present participle and the verb  $L_7$  agree with the subject. The form cannot be employed in the negative, nor can it be used with compound verbs/aspect indicators. In addition, the present participle of by cannot be used in this construction.

I will reach there in ten minutes. You keep working.

Sunil kept going to Nargis' house, but Nargis had already left with Raj.

It is my request that you keep trying to learn Urdu instead of learning Arabic.

Note: The present participle of i when combined with the i has two meanings: its expected meaning "keep on going" and an idiomatic one "to disappear, to be lost."

If only such evils would disappear from the world!

In the past tense, the particle is not used even when the participle is that of a transitive verb.

16.4 Present Participle and the Construction

The present participle of a verb when combined with  $l_{p}$  can have several meanings, the most common being: (1) persevering or deliberately continuing with an action and (2) gradual unfolding of the action resulting in change. Since  $l_{p}$  the governing verb is intransitive, constructions in the past tense do not use the particle  $\dot{L}$ .

اس کو تیز بخار تھا گر وہ اپنا کام کرتا گیا۔

He had a high fever but he went on working.

تم گوشت کھاتے جاؤ اور تمہاری صحت خراب ہوتی جائیگی۔

Continue eating meat and your health will keep deteriorating.

وقت گررتا گیا اور ہم ایک دوسرے کو بھولتے گئے۔

Time kept passing and we gradually forgot each other.

### 16.3-16.4 Reading and Translation Drill

ا۔ میں دیکھتا رہا اور بس نگل گئی۔ بوڑھا کچل والا محنت کرتا رہا اور اِس کا بیٹا اپنے باپ کی مدد کرنے سے بجائے کر کٹ کھیلنے چلا گیا۔ تم پاکستان جانے کی کو شیش کرتے رہے۔ ہم پاکستان جانے کی کو شیش کرتے رہے۔ میں کام کرلو گئی۔ تمہماری طبیعت خراب ہے۔ تم سوتے رہو۔ میں کام کرلو گئی۔ تمہماری طبیعت خراب ہے۔ تم سوتے رہو۔ اگر تم اپنے والدین کا نداق اُڑاتے گئے تو تم کو کا میا بی کیے ملیکی؟ اپ اپنے والدین کی دیکھے بھال کرتے جائیے اور طُدا آپ کو کمبی تم دیکھا۔ میں کھانی کا بڑلان کراتا گیا گر یہ کھانی کم ہی نہ ہو تی۔ میں کھانی کا بڑلان کراتا گیا گر یہ کھانی کم ہی نہ ہو تی۔

Translate the following sentences using the present participle and by construction:

Instead of talking to me on the phone, he kept sending me letters.

- 2. Thirteen years after coming to the United States, they keep on remembering Pakistan.
- 3. I kept trying to explain to him and he kept watching the movie.

 On Saturday, Sarah and Salma kept dialing the telephone, but because of the rain the phone was not working.

Translate the following sentences into Urdu using the present participle and disconstruction:

- 1. Keep on saying your (Muslim ritual) prayers and then see how happy God is with you!
- Shaan went on throwing the trash onto the street, but the children kept bringing it back into his house.
- 3. She went on narrating her (own) story and the little girl gradually fell asleep.

Why wouldn't Rakesh be angry? Reshma kept making fun of him instead of listening to his poetry.

# 16.5 Present Participle in the Narration of the Past

Present participles without auxiliary verbs are frequently encountered in narrations of those past events that occurred routinely or habitually. In such cases, the narration usually begins with an initial sentence containing a present participle followed by an auxiliary, but in subsequent sentences/statements, the auxiliary is dropped and the present participle suffices on its own.

In his childhood Sajid would often go to his grandmother's house during the summer holidays,

eat mangoes, swim, and watch Shah Rukh Khan's films.

Until one day before his death (literally, transfer), he did all the house work, reply to all the

letters, and try to help the poor.

#### 16.5 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate into English:

4.

سئتی۔ ۳۔ جب بھی فراز پریشان ہوتا تھا یا وہ زیادہ شراب پی لیتا یا اپنے گھروالوں کو تنگ کرتا۔

Translate into Urdu:

- During our childhood, before our grandmother's death, we used to get up at 6 am every morning, swim, take a bath, drink milk, eat fresh hot rotis, and then go to school.
- 2. That sly boy would eat all the sweets, lie, and bother all the shopkeepers.
- While driving her car that girl would listen to music, sing songs, and talk to her friends on her cell phone.
- While walking down the streets, these mad boys would scream, throw fruits and vegetables, and make fun of democracy.

# 16.6 Past Participle and Construction

The masculine form of a past participle when combined with the verb  $i \int indicates an action performed habitually. In such constructions, only the verb <math>i \int inflects$ , agreeing in number and gender with the subject. Since this construction is considered to be intransitive in the past tense, the subject is not marked by the particle  $\dot{a}$ .

Son, go on helping [habitually] the poor.

Mummy darling habitually used to come to our house to drink tea.

Keep drinking your medicine [for your own benefit].

Note: For this construction, the verb uses uses as its past participle and not its normal form

زس راج کے گھر جایا کرتی ہے۔

Nargis habitually goes to Raj's house.

# 16.6 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following into Urdu :

1. When we were healthy, we used to go [habitually] to that beautiful garden every evening.

2. I never talked to his wife. I used to remain [habitually] quiet in his house.

3. In his childhood Raj used to climb [habitually] the tree that was in front of his house.

I don't know why my parents don't give me permission to go to the movies. When they
were in college they used to watch films every Friday.

المبين تو 16.7 The Uses of

"otherwise." ورشه occurs frequently in colloquial Urdu-Hindi as a substitute for تبيل تو

Get used to working in the heat, otherwise you will have a difficult time in Dubai.

دوائی کھا کو نہیں تو بخار بڑھ چائیگا۔

Take (literally, eat) the medicine, otherwise the fever will increase.

You call the police, otherwise I will do so myself.

is also used in colloquial Urdu-Hindi, usually in the context of conversations, to respond

negatively to assertions and connotes "not really," "no way," or "no."

Faraz: Shad! Are you talking among yourselves about me?

Shad: Not really! Why would we talk about you?

16.7 Reading and Translation Drill

## 16.8 Emphatic Negative Assertions

Emphatic negative assertions are created by combining  $f_{2}$  with the oblique infinitive of the verb to be negated, followed by  $\mathcal{L}/\mathcal{L}$ . The possessive  $\mathcal{L}$  agrees in gender and number with the subject.

I am used to speaking the truth. I won't lie!

## 16.8 Reading and Translation Drill

Translate the following sentences into Urdu using the above construction:

1. It is appropriate that you ask her about the newspaper. I will not ask her!

- 2. I will not call Ali!
- 3. Salim can dry the clothes. I will not dry them!
- 4. I will not sit in the hot sun!
- 5. I have to go work now. I will not wait for the bus!
- 6. I will not lie to my parents! I am used to [habituated to] telling the truth.

راج اور نرگس کی شادی ۲۵ دِسمبر کو دنی میں بہت دھوم دھام سے ہوئی۔ دونوں کے دالدین نے مہمانوں سے گزارِش کی کہ تحفول یا پھولوں پر پید خرچ کرنے کی بجائے دہ اِس سپتال کو مدددیں جس میں نرگس کام کرتی ہے۔ شادی کے بعد دُلہا دُلہن چی مون کے لئے کراچی چلے گئے۔ کراچی پاکستان کا سب سے بڑا شہر ہے۔ کراچی کی سیر کرنے کے بعد یہ سندر جوڑی اسلام آباد کے لئے روانہ ہو گئی۔ اسلام آباد دیکھنے کے بعد یہ لوگ مری جائیتگے۔ مری پاکستان کا بہت ہی خوبصورت ہل اِسٹیشن، یعنی پہاڑی مقام، ہے۔ مری اسلام آباد سے کوئی ۲۸ میل دور ہے۔ سرگس ایپ بچپن میں گر میوں کی چھٹیوں میں مری جاتی تھی، شینیں کھیلتی، میٹھے بیٹھے پھل کھاتی اور بہت سوتی۔

کراچی سے اسلام آباد جاتے ہوئے رائے میں راج اور نرگس نے کئی دلچپ چیزیں دیکھیں : کھیت میں کام کرتے ہوئے کسان، پاکستان کے چھوٹے چھوٹے شہروں کی زندگی، مغلوں کی بنوائی ہوئی عمار تیں، اور کرِکٹ کھیلتے ہوئے بچے نرگس کے ساتھ بہت ساری کتابیں بھی تھیں جو دہ سفر میں پڑھنا چاہتی تھی گرران اُسے نٹک کرتا گیا۔ اب سنیئے راج اور نرگس کی گفتگو: نرگس: کیا تہمارے پاس کوئی کتاب نہیں ہے؟

راج: شہیں جان!میں چلتی ہوئی گاڑی میں کتاب نہیں پڑھ سکتا ہوں۔ طبیعت کچھ خراب ہو جاتی ہے۔ اور پھر تم کتنی خوبصورت ہو! تم کو سامنے رکھتے ہوئےاور ان ٹچھر دن کے بچ میں اور کوئی چیز کیسے کر سکتا ہوں؟!

#### 16.10 Conversation Practice

Sunil meets Raj and Nargis after they come back from their honeymoon.

Sunil: Nargis, I kept calling you but you weren't home.

- Raj: Don't you know that we had gone our honeymoon?
- Sunil: I am used to talking to Nargis every evening. What more can I say?
- Raj: Don't bother us Sunil. Nargis will absolutely not play tennis with you.
- Nargis: Raj! Let me speak otherwise I will never forgive you. Sunil is my friend and you need to get used to him instead of fighting with him.
- Sunil: Look Nargis! I have written this ghazal for you: "I kept thinking of you all night long, my moist eyes kept smiling all night long."

Raj: He is lying to you Nargis. This is not his own ghazal. This is a stolen ghazal! Nargis: Sunil, is your name Makhdum? You ought to be ashamed.

- Sunil: Forget about the ghazal. Have you forgotten we used to play tennis in our childhood, cook food, sing songs and dance? The truth is that I love you!
- Raj: You ought to have your brain examined (medically). You are crazy! Nargis is my wife and she loves only me!

Sunil: Oh what should I do? Nargis, I will write another ghazal for you.

- Nargis: Enough! Sunil, you keep on writing poetry but I won't read it (emphatic). Raj, you need to start writing poetry.
- Raj: Listen to this song. I just wrote it: How crazy is my heart! It loves you.
- Nargis: Raj, I know that you did not write this song. We learned it in Urdu class. Don't you you remember that you kept singing it for me every day after class? No, my dear Raj. It is not necessary for you to write a song for me. Your beautiful eyes have stolen my heart.

#### 16.11 Songs

روتے ہوئے آتے ہیں سب، ہنستا ہوا جو جائیگا
 وہ مُقدر کا سرکندر جانِ من کہلائیگا
 وہ سکندر کیا تھاجس نے ظلم سے جیتا جہاں
 پیارے جیتے دِلوں کو وہ جھنکا دے آساں
 جو سِتاروں پر کہانی پیار کی لِکھ جائیگا
 وہ مُقدر کا سکندر جانِ من کہلائیگا۔

(r

(٣

### Glossary for songs

= fate (m) Alexander the Great my darling = جان من tyranny, oppression (m) = to win tis = to cause to bend to be called, to be named = كمالاتا by chance, accidentally يول على road side = m clo to stop; to stand still = تحمنا to decline, to fade, to sink = وُهلتا the world; time; age (m) زماند = story, tale (m) = brief, short الكر = lamp; light (m) to be extinguished, to go out جمتا entire, whole (suffix) بر = entire night the entire night بر = eye (f) i = moist, wet = noist, wet = candle (f) i = candle (f) i = sorrow (m) = flame (f) i = reed flute (f) بر یل = musical, melodious = musical, appealing = cry, voice, call (f)

16.12 Vocabulary

to bite, to cut	کالڈ
to bother	نگ کرنا
consideration, deep thought (m)	غور
to consider thoughtfully	غور کرنا

to take x into consideration	x پر تحور کرنا
dear, precious, beloved (m/f)	2.9
death (lit. transfer) (m)	انقال
to die (for x to die)	x کا اِنتقال ہونا
effort (f)	كوسطيش
to try	کو شیش کرنا
enemy (m/f)	ذشتمن
helpless	جور اب بى
helplessness (f)	مجبوری اب بسی
instead of	کے الی بجائے
lie (m)	تحصوف
to lie	كمحصوث بولنا
long live	زِندہ باد
mosquito (m)	J.
pair, couple (f)	جوڑی
parents (m)	والدين
to perform; to accomplish; to pay	ادا کرنا
principle (m)	أصول
request (f)	<sup>گ</sup> زارِش
slave (m)	تقلام
slave girl (f)	كنيز
to take care of x	سیر x کی د کمچھ بھال کرنا

throne (m)	تخت
truth (m); true	E
to speak the truth	لیچ بولنا
to be used to x, to be accustomed to x	xکا عادی ہونا

# **Reading Passages**

**Reading Passage One** 

بر صغر کے موسم سردی: سردی کے موسم میں شفنڈ ہوتی ہے اور کافی جگہوں پر برف بھی پڑتی ہے۔ اِس موسم کے تھو صی پھل سیب اور امر ود ہیں۔ بہار: بہار میں نہ تو زیادہ گرمی ہوتی ہے نہ زیادہ سر دی۔ ہر طرف پھول کھیلتے ہیں۔ شاعر اس موسم کو پیار کا موسم بھی کہتے ہیں۔ گرمی: اِس موسم میں تیز دھوپ پڑتی ہے۔ گرمی کے دِن کمیے ہوتے ہیں اور راتیں چھوٹی۔ آم اور تربوز گر میوں کے خصوصی پھل ہیں۔ برسات: گر میول کے بعد برسات کا موسم آتاہے اور اِس موسم میں بارش ہوتی ہے۔ برسات کا سب سے بڑا تہوار (تیوہار) رکشا بند هن ہوتاہ۔ رکشا بند هن کے دن تبنیں این بھایوں کی کلایوں پر راکھی باند حق میں اور بھائی یہ عہد کرتے ہیں کہ وہ تمام مُمر این بہنوں کی دِفاظت (رکشا) کرینگے۔ جزال: خزالکا دوسرا نام پت جھڑ ہے۔ اِس موسم میں در ختوں کے پتے رنگ بدلتے ہیں اور پھر آہتہ آہتہ برکنے لگتے ہیں۔ فحراء اِس موسم کی کیفیت کو اپنے محبوبے بچمز جانے کے عم سے تشبیہ دیتے ہیں۔

#### Glossary

387

بر" صغير	the Subcontinent	تحصند	cold (f)
مردى	winter (f)	تحوصى	special
عام طور پر	commonly, usually	امر ود	guava (m)
برف پڑتا	to snow	يهاد	spring (f)

كافى	enough, sufficient	(پھول) کھلنا	to blossom, bloom
گری	summer (f)	بر (m) بیت مجفر (m)	autumn; fall
<i>ز</i> بور	watermelon (m)	در خت	tree (m)
تهوار(تتوبار) رکشا بند هن	festival (m)	e,	leaf(m)
ركشا بندهن	festival in which sisters	راکل	thread tied by sisters on
	express love for their		the wrist of their brothers
	brothers (m)		on the day of Rakhsha
			bandan (f)
كلاتى	wrist (f)	محبوب	beloved (m)
عيد	promise, vow (m)	خبوب بچھر، تا	to be separated
تمام عمر	entire life	تثيه	simile (f)

to compare

poets (plural of fin)(m)

**Reading Passage Two** 

فراء

تشبيه وينا (safeguard; protection(f)

state, condition (f)

جفاظت (ركشا)

كفت

موحى پيش گوئى آج کراچی کا مطلع جزوی طور پر ابر آلود رہے گا۔ بعض مقامات پر بونداباندی یا تیز بارش کا بھی إمكان ب-زیادہ نیادہ درجہ حرارت : ۳۹ ڈیگری (درجہ) سینٹی گریڈ ادر کم سے کم درجہ جرارت: ۲۷ ڈیگری (درجہ) سینٹی گریڈ ۲۴ فیصد ۷ ملی میٹر رطوبت: بارش:

سار ه یا بخ بخ مات <u>ب</u>ح

طلوع آفتاب: غروب آفات:

Glossary

forecast (f)	xکا امکان ہوتا	the possibility of x to
sky, horizon (m)		happen
partly	درجه ۲۶ ارت	temperature (m)
percent	رطوبت	humidity (f)
cloudy	طلوع آفآب	sunrise (m)
drizzle (f)	غروب آفآب	sunset (m)
	sky, horizon (m) partly percent cloudy	sky, horizon (m) partly درجہء حرارت percent رطوبت cloudy آفتاب

#### **Reading Passage Three**

حيرر آباد دكن

آتے ہیں کیونکہ حیدر آباد ہائی فیک کا بھی مرکز بن گیا ہے۔ اس شہر کو بعض لوگ سا تبر آباد بھی کہتے

Glossary

-01

چلاقہ	area, region (m)	ناياب	rare
د کمن	the Deccan plateau (	عجائب گھر (m	museum (m)
قديم	old, ancient	تاور	uncommon, rare
تېزىچى تغليى	cultural	آثار قديمه	archaeological objects
تغليى	educational	انمول	priceless
51	center (m)	خزاند	treasure (m)
مُشتر كه	shared, composite	غيرمكى	foreign (m/f)
تهذيب	culture (f)	21	tourist (m/f)
كيواره	cradle (m)	بعض	some, few
خريدارى	shopping (f)		

**Reading Passage Four** 

آ ي مُكراكي

دعوت میں میزبان عورت نے مہمان خاتون سے کہا: اور سموت کیجیئے۔ مهمان خاتون: شكر بد مي تو تين كما چكى بول-مربان: کھاتے تو آپ فے گیارہ ہیں لیکن یہاں کون کن رہاہے؟!

بارش شوہر نےاین بیگم سے پوچھا: کیا باہر بارش ہور بی ب بوى: كيا بارش بھى اندر بھى موتى ب؟!

ا) ہر دیوں کا موسم تھا۔ ایک دِن غالب کے ایک دوست، خان صاحب، ان کے گھر آئے۔ غالب نے شراب کا گلاس بھر کر ان کے سامنے رکھ دیا۔ خان صاحب غالب کا مُنہ دیکھنے لگھ اور کہا: میں نے توبہ کرلی ہے۔ اب میں شراب نہیں پیتا۔ غالب مُتحجب ہو کر ہو گے: کیا! سر دیوں میں بھی نہیں پیتے ؟!

۲) ایک صاحب نے غالب سے کہا کہ شراب پینی سخت گناہ ہے۔غالب نے بنس کر یو چھا: اگر پیٹیں تو کیا ہو تاہے؟ ان صاحب نے جواب دیا: شراب پینے والوں کی دُعا قبول نہیں ہوتی۔ غالب نے مُسَرَّراکر کہا: دِس کے پاس شراب ہو کیا وہ آدمی کِسی اور چیز کی دُعا مانگ سکتاہے؟! ایک کپیلی ایک جانور ایسا جس کی ڈم پر پیسہ، سر پر بھی تاج ہے بادشاہ کے جیسا، بولو کیاہے؟

(search glossary below for answer)

C1----

	<u>G</u>	lossary	
شتكرانا	to smile	خاتون	(respected) woman
سموسہ	samosa (m)	بيكم	wife (respected) woman
ميزيان	host (m/f)	<i>گھبر</i> انا	to worry
مہمان بھروسہ کامیاب کامیابی	guest (m/f)	پورا	complete
بجر وسم	trust, confidence (m)	<i>سخ</i> ت	severe, hard
كامياب	successful	م <sup>س</sup> مناه	sin (m)
كاميابي	success (f)	ۇما	prayer (f)
پريشان ہونا	to worry	قبول ہونا	to be accepted
پریشان میونا ملکب عدم روانه میونا	land of eternity	دُعا مانگنا	to ask a favor; to pray
	to depart	<i>پی</i> لی	riddle (f)
موقع ملنا	to get an opportunity	15	tail (f)
لطيفه	joke (m)	~	coin (m)
يھر تا	to fill	ひて	crown (m)
لطيفه ب <i>عر</i> نا توبه شعجب جونا	repentance (f)	15*	peacock (m)
لمتعجب تهونا	to be astonished		

# **Reading Passage Five**

اكبركا شابى دسترخوان

آئیے مزیدار کھانا لیکایتے! آلو کو بھی بنانے کے لئے ہمیں این اشیاء کی ضرورت پڑیکی: ۵ آلو، اپھول کو بھی،ا عدد پیاز، ۲ سرخ ٹماٹر، آدھی پیالی تیل، آدھا چچ اورک پاؤڈر،ا چچ کہن پاؤڈر، آدھا چچ گرم مصالحہ، آدھی چچ ہلدی، نمک اور لال مرچ حب ذائقہ، کر ھی پتا، ہرا وھنیا۔ آلو کو بھی بنانے کی ترکیب:

آلوادر پھول کو بھی کو چھیل کر چھوٹے گلڑے کر لیں۔ پیازادر ٹماڑ کو بھی باریک کا ٹیں۔ تیل کو کڑھائی میں گرم کر لیں اور پھر اس میں پیاز کو کڑھی پیتن کے ساتھ تل لیں۔ جب پیاز کارنگ بادامی ہو جائے تب اس میں آلو، کو بھی، ٹماٹر، ادرک، لہن، نمک، مرچ، اور گرم مصالحہ تل لیں اور پھر ایک پیال جائے تب اس میں آلو، کو بھی، ٹماٹر، ادرک، لہن، نمک، مرچ، اور گرم مصالحہ تل لیں اور پھر ایک پیال پائی مل کرد ھیں آئچ پر پلنے دیں۔ جب آلواور پھول گو بھی مگر جائے گر ماتھ تل لیں۔ جب پیاز کارنگ بادامی ہو جائے تب اس میں آلو، کو بھی، ٹماٹر، ادرک، لہن، نمک، مرچ، اور گرم مصالحہ تل لیں اور پھر ایک پیال پائی مل کرد ھیں آئچ پر پلنے دیں۔ جب آلواور پھول گو بھی مگل جائیں اور پائی خشک ہو جائے تب کڑھائی پڑھائی پڑو لیے سے اتار لیں اور سجادٹ کے لئے ہر ادھینا و پڑال لیں۔ آلی کرم گرم روٹی کرم گرم روٹی کے ساتھ مزیدار آلو پڑھی نوٹ فرمائے۔

Glossary

شابى	royal	حسب ذاكفه	according to taste
دستر خوان	dining cloth* (m)	كر هى پتا	curry leaves (m)
آلو	potato (m)	ہرا دھنیا	coriander (m)
بند کو بھی	cabbage (f)	چھیلنا	to peel
پھول گو بھی	cauliflower (f)	فكوا	piece (m)
ژکیب	recipe (f)	باريک	thin, fine, delicate
اشياء	things; ingredients (f)	СК	to cut
عدو	quantity (m)	کڑھائی	skillet; frying pan (f)

ىزخ	red	تلنا	to fry
ٹ اڑ	tomato (m)	بادام	almond (m)
<u>با</u> ل	cup (f)	يادامى	brown, almond-colored
پ <u>ا</u> لی تیں	oil (m)	وهيما	slow, simmer
اور ک	ginger (m)	ź.T	fire, flame (f)
<i>لہ</i> ی	garlic (m)	گلنا	to melt, soften
گرم مصالحہ ہلدی	mixture of spices (m)	فتك	dry
ہلدی	tumeric (f)	چو لېرا چو لېرا	stove (m)
تک	salt (m)	سچاوے	decoration (f)
3.	pepper (f)	نوش فرمانا	to eat with relish

\*a sheet spread on the floor on which various dishes are placed. Traditionally, before the introduction of dining tables, family members and guests sat around this sheet as they partook of the meal.

**Reading Passage Six** 

ريديو سے

السلام علیم۔ یہ ریڈریو پیٹاور ہے۔ آج ۲۷ رجب ۲۷ الا ہے ہوار ال وقت رات کے دس بج بیں۔ آج کی تازہ عالمی خبریں ساعت فرمائیے۔ امریکہ کے صدریل کلنٹن کا دورہ مصر آج ختم ہوا۔ صدر کلنٹن کی مصر کے دار الحکومت قاہرہ میں فلسطینی نمائیندوں کے ایک دفد سے بھی ملاقات ہوئی۔ اِس ملاقات کے دوران دفد کے سربراہ نے صدر کلنٹن کو بتایا کہ مغرب تیسری دنیا کے مسائل سے انجان ہے۔ انہوں نے مزید یہ بھی کہا کہ اگر مغربی نمالک واقعی مشرق وسطی میں امن قائم کرناچاہتے ہیں یا دہشت گردی کو روکنا چاہتے ہیں توان کو چاہیئے کہ دوہ فلسطینیوں کے مسائل کو بہتر طور پر سبحضے کی کو سٹیش کریں۔ایک اور فلسطینی نما کندے نے صدر کلنٹن کو صاف صاف لفظوں میں یہ بھی بتایا کہ مثر ق وسطی میں انسانی حقوق، خصوصاً فلسطینی حقوق، کی پامالی ہو رہی ہے۔اس ملاقات کے بعد صدر کلنٹن نے اہرام مصر کی سیر کی۔ آج سے امریکی صدر شام اور اُردن کا دورہ شروع کرینگے۔

Glossary

	0	Ussal y	
تازه	fresh	نما تنده	representative (m/f)
عالمی	international	وفد	delegation (m)
ساعت فرماييح	please listen	سر دراه	head, leader (m/f)
وعر	Egypt (m)	ملا قات	meeting (f)
دوره	tour, trip, visit (m)	کے دوران	during
دوره کرنا	to tour, visit	مغرب	West
دارالحكومت	capital city (m)	متله،مسائل	issue/issues (m)
0,7,15	Cairo (m)	انجان	unaware/ignorant
فلسطين	Palestine (m)	27	furthermore
ملک، ممالک	country/countries (m)	حق، حقوق	right/rights (m)
مشرق وسطى	Middle East	تحوصنا	especially
امن	peace (m)	پالى	destruction, violation(f)
قائم كرنا	to establish	ابرام معر	Pyramids of Egypt (m)
د هشت گردی	terrorism (f)	شام	Syria (m)
صاف صاف	clearly, emphatically	أردن	Jordan (m)
لفظر، الفاظ	word/ words (m)	انسانی	human

#### **Reading Passage Seven**

افارے

اتوام مُتحدہ کے نمائندے رجم بھٹ نے کل شام کی پریس کا نفر نس میں بتایا کہ ایڈر کا مرض تیزی سے جنوبی ایشیا میں ٹیچیل رہا ہے۔اگر اس مرض پر جلد قابو نہ پایا گیا تولا کھوں لوگ مر سکتے ہیں۔ بھٹ نے مزید یہ بھی کہا کہ ایڈز صرف ایشیا اور افریقہ کا مسئلہ نہیں بلکہ ایک عالمی مسئلہ ہے جس کو حل کرنے کے لئے دُنیا کے سارے متلکوں کو ایک دوسرے کے ساتھ تبادلہ، خیال کرنا پڑیگا تا کہ ایڈز کے پھا نقلی نیکے کی ایجاد جلد از جلد ہو سکے۔ بھٹ کی اس رائے ونیا کی کئی تنظیمیں خصوصاً عالمی اور آد صحت یعنی ورلڈ ہیلتھ آر گنا ئیزیشن اتفاق کرتی ہیں۔

#### Glossary

اتوامٍ مُتحده	The United Nations	جلداذجلد	as soon as possible
يرض	disease, epidemic (m)	xک ایجاد ہونا	x to be invented
xپ قابو پانا	to bring x under	21,	opinion (f)
	control		
حل کرنا	to solve	تنظيم	organization(f)
تبادلهء خيال	exchange of ideas	اداره	institution (m)
ج <b>فا تطتی</b>	preventive, protective	x _ ارتفاق کرنا	to agree with x
یکہ	vaccination (m)		

#### Note on the Calendar

In most of the Urdu-speaking world, one encounters two calendars: the Islamic lunar or *hijrii* calendar; and the Gregorian, Common Era one, called *isavii*. Dates are written from right to left, with the day first (at times followed by / sign), the month second, and the year third. The year is

usually written over the \_\_\_\_\_ sign which stand for the Arabic word for year, "sana." This sign is followed either by a (the sign for Islamic hijrii calendar) or + (the sign for the Gregorian isavii calendar). All months are masculine in gender.

	امہینے	5 %	
Rajab	۲- رجب	Muharram	ا۔ تُحرس
Sha'abaan	۸_شعبان	Safar	۲_ صفر
Ramzaan/Ramdhaan	۹_رمضان	Rabii' ul-awwal	٣_ر بيج الاوّل
Shawwal	•ا_ شوال	Rabii'us-saanii	٣_ر بيع القاني
Zuu'l qadaa(Zii qaad)	اا_ذوالقعده (ذيقعد)	Jamaadii ul-awwal	۵_ جمادی الاول
Zuu'l hijjaa(Ziilhijj)	ارذوالجر (ذی الحج)	Jamaadii us-saanii	۲_ جمادی التکانی
	ی مہینے	عيسوة	
July	جولائي	January	جۇرى
August	اگست	February	فردرى
September	متر مجبر	March	بارچ
October	اكتوبر	April	اپریل
November	تومير	May	ی
December	د سمبر	June	جون

Sample dates:

9 شوتل ٨٨ ١٢ ه ١٢ ٩ من المعنا 9th Shawwal, 1388 Hijri

10th January 1968 C.E. + اجورى 197٨ -

# Urdu - English Glossary

now	اب
father (m)	P
you - formal	آپ
sister (f)	ţĩ
your (formal)	آپ کا / آپکا
one's own	نچا
this much	٤
to pick up	أتفانا
to wake up, rise	أتحنا
today	55
permission (f)	إجازت
give permission to leave (got to run)	إجازت وتحتيح
these days, nowadays	إجازت إجازت ويحيي آج كل
pickles (m)	اجار
good	التحا
newspaper (m)	اخبار
to perform; to accomplish; to pay	ادا کرنا
greetings, hello, hi	آداب عرض / آداب
actor (m)	اداكار
actress (f)	اخبار ادا کرنا آداب عرض / آداب اداکار اداکار
30	

human being, man, person (m)	آدى
half	آدمی آدها / آده
in this direction	إدحر
in that direction	أدحر
intention (m)	إراده
rest (m)	آرام
to rest	آرام کرنا
to fly; to cause to fly	إراده آرام آرام كرنا اُڑانا
independence, freedom (f)	
in this duration	آزادی اِس دوران میں
therefore	
use (m)	ای گئے استعال استعال کرنا
to use	إستعال كرنا
to use x	
student (m/f)	x کا اِستعال کرنا اِسٹوڈنٹ اِسم شریف آسان اُصول
noble name (m) (formal Urdu)	اسم شريف
sky (m)	ر ا مریند آسان
principle (m)	أصول
generally, often; most; many	أكثر
although	اگر د
although	الدية
cupboard, cabinet (f)	البنة. المبارى

owl; fool; stupid (m/f)		ٱلَّو
potato (m)		şîT
mango (m)		ſT
mother (f)		المثال
test, trial, examination (m)		إميحان
America (m)		امريكہ
American		اِمیخان امریکہ امریکی <i>ا</i> امریکن امن
peace, safety (m)		ا من
mother (f)		اقى
rich		A
to come		tĩ
waiting, expectation (m)		إنتظار
to wait for x		اِنْظَار x کا اِنْظَار کرنا اِنْظَام
arrangement (m)		انتظام
death (lit. transfer) (m)		
to die (for x to die)		اِنْقَال xکا اِنْقَال ہونا
inside		یں ہیں اندر اندر
		اندجيرا
darkness (m)		إنسان
human being (m)		
tears (m)		آنىو
God willing (may God will that)		اِنشاء الله أن كارأنكا
his, her (formal)		أن كارأتكا
	401	

their		أن كا/أنكا
eye (f)		
English (adj.)		انگرېزې
English (the language)		آتکھ انگریزی انگستان انگستان
England (m)		انگستان
English (adj.)		الكليتاني
finger (f)		أتكلى
vagabond, wanderer (m/f	)	آ واره
voice, sound, noise (f)		آواز
above		آدي.
and		پ اور
more, additional		اور
offspring, children (f)		اولاد
Iran (m)		ايران
Iranian		ايراني
once		ایک بار
	Ļ	
father (m)		ĻĻ
father (m)		باپ
speech, word; thing (abstra	ct); matter; affair (f)	بات
to speak, to talk, converse		بات کرنا
	402	

sister (f)	يا.تى
rain (f)	بارش
to rain	باریش ہونا
market, bazaar (m)	بإزار
garden (m)	ĖĻ
hair (m)	يال
absolutely, completely	يالنكل
arm, embrace (f)	بانهد
cook (m)	بادَر چی
out, outside	باير
to play (an instrument)	يجانا
childhood (m)	بچېن چېپن
child (m)	**
fever; wrath; steam (m)	بتخار
worse	74
worst	يدتر بدترين يدلنا
to change	يدلنا
Wednesday (m)	يد ھ
bad, evil, wicked	12
to be offended, to feel insulted	نرا مانتا
Britain (m)	بُرا ماننا برطانيہ برف
snow/ice (f)	برف

rice w/ spicy meat or vegetables (f)	بريانى
big	12;
grown up, elder person (m/f)	52.112
to cause to increase; to enlarge (transitive)	يزحانا
to increase, to grow, to extend (intransitive)	يزهنا
revered person, respected elder	يۇرگ
enough!	يس!
without	(کے) بغیر
to call, invite	tlf
nightingale (f)	تلتل
cat (f)	ىتى
to make, to build, to create	tt:
Bangladesh (m)	بنگله دلیش
to be made, built, created	tł
to play the role of x	ti x
to cause to be built; constructed with (used with	بنوانا
S and =)	
elderly (adj.); elderly person (m)	يوزحا
brave, courageous	بهاؤر
very	. /ب
better	یوژها بهادُر بهت بهتر
best	بېترين

sister (f)	57
helpless	یں بے بس
helplessness (f)	بے بی
daughter (f)	بینی
to sit	يبيثهنا
middle	Ş
poor thing/ fellow (m/f)	يجاره / يجارى
to sell	يچنا
fed up	يترار
scores of	بيسيول
useless, unemployed	بکار
sick, ill (adj.); sick person (m/f)	بجار
sickness, illness (f)	بیماری بیوی
wife (f)	لا يج

India (m)	بھارت
heavy	يھارى
to flee, to run away from	بھاگنا
brother (m)	يحاتى
ghost (m)	كموت
hunger (f)	يحؤك

to forget		يمقولنا
also, too		یھی
to send		بهيجنا
crowd (f)		1 the
	ų	
papad (crispy appetizers) (m)		źĻ
toilet, excrement, stool (m)		بإخانه
Pakistan (m)		پاکستان
Pakistani		ياكستاني
crazy, mad, insane		پاگل
to raise, nourish; maintain; to protect		پالنا
to find		ιĻ
water (m)		يانى
father (m)		liş.
pants, trousers (f)		يټلون
wife (f)		يتنى
address; hint, clue, trace (m)		Ç
to come to know; to find out		پتا چلنا
husband (m)		پتا چلنا پَتی پیچھاں
last, past, previous; back, latter		المججعل

on

4

old (thing)	じん
day before yesterday; day after tomorrow	پُرانا پر سول
family (m)	ير وار
worried	پریشان
distress, misery, anxiety (f)	پریشان پریشانی پریم چند
Premchand - prominent author of Urdu-Hindi	پر یم چند
narrative prose, died 1936	
studies, education (f)	پڑھائی
to study, to read	پڑھائی پڑھنا
pleasing (adjective); choice, preference (f)	پند
favorite	پينديده
to cook	لکان
to catch, apprehend	پکڑتا
moment (m)	ېل
bed (m)	يانگ
fan; ventilator (m)	ينكحا
mountain, hill (m)	پياژ
to recognize; to know; to perceive; to discern	يجاتنا
to reach	يتخيتا
to ask	ي چينا
quarter less than (after whole number)	<i>پو</i> ن
Party and the second	يار
love (m)	
407	

to love	چپار کر ٹا
onion (f)	پيار کرن پياز
thirst (f)	ران مال
cup (f)	بالى
stomach (m)	چيٹ
to be born	پيدا ہونا
leg (m)	15
Monday (m)	12,
money, cash, wealth; coin (m)	پیار پیہ
urine (m)	پيثاب
yellow	lts
to drink	t:

De.

again

yet, still

see you soon (lit. we will meet again)

fruit (m)

fruit seller (m/f)

flower (m)

to spread

to throw

يبھر يبھر بھی يبھر ملينگے پھر ملينگے پھر پھیلنا پھيلنا

star (m)	-11
date, history (f)	をょ
historical	تاريخى
so that	<i>ر</i> لت
gift (m)	تحقیہ
throne (m)	تخت
to sit down (formal Urdu)	تشريف ركهنا
to enter (formal Urdu)	تشريف لانا
picture, photograph (f)	تصوير
praise (f)	تعريف
to praise x	× کی تعریف کرنا
details, explanation; analysis (f)	تقصيل
speech, recital; statement (f)	تقرير
to give a speech	تقرير كرنا
until	تک
you - informal	لخم
body (m)	بحن
to bother	کن تنگ کرنا
you - least formal	ţ
to break (transitive)	توڑنا

and a		
ready		-يار
to swim		م <u>ت</u> یر نا
swift, quick; hot (spicy), fiery, sharp		ž
festival (m)		نتوبار
	2	
	<i>w</i>	
tiredness (f)		فتحكن
some, few; scanty, little; less		تحوزا
	ك	
piece, morsel (m)		1.E
		15-
hat (f)		ڻو پي
to break (intransitive)		63
	Ď	
to wait; to stop; to stay		تهبرنا
cold (adjective)		ههرنا <del>ت</del> ھنڈا
cold (noun, f)		تحتذ
fine, good, exactly		بهيك
to become well		یٹھیک بٹھیک ہو جانا

	5	
Japan (m)		جايات
Japanese		جاپانی
cold (weather) (m)		جاڑا
to wake up, rise		جاكنا
life, soul; sweetheart; energy (f)		جان
to go		چاتا
to know		جاننا
animal (m)		جانور
when		جب
germs (m)		جراهيم
celebration (m)		جش
place, vacancy (f)		جگہ
gentleman, sir, mister (m)		جناب
Friday (m)		22
Thursday (f)		تحرات
democracy (f)		يُمعد يُمعر ات تمهوريت جواب
answer (m)		جواب
young (adj.); youth (m/f)		جوان
youthfulness, youth (f)		جوانى
shoe (m)		ts

pair, couple (f) lie (m) to lie no, not yes

to live, to be alive

life partner (m/f)

جوڑی بھٹوٹ بھٹوٹ بولنا بحی نہیں بینا جین ساتقی

3

clever, cunning, sly	<u>چالاک</u>
moon (m)	چاند
moonlight (f)	چا ندتی
rice (pl. m.)	چاڌل
tea (f)	<u>چ</u> انے
shut up; be quiet	ېپ ربو
to steal	はえ
200 (m)	چویا گھر
to climb	چڑھنا
to drive	چلاتا
to come along, to go along, to set out, to walk	چلنا
spoon; sycophant (colloquial) (m)	
wound; injury (f)	چوٹ

theft (f)	چرى
thief (m)	J.S.
to scream, yell	L'ÉR
thing (f)	7.,
China (m)	چين
Chinese	مینی مینی
sugar (f)	<u>چى</u>

student (Hindi) (m/f)	چھاتر
umbrella; canopy (f)	چھتری
holiday, vacation (f)	چھتی
knife (f)	چھر ی
small	چھوٹا

condition, state (m)		ال
condition (f)		لت
action, deed; mischief; movement (f)		کت
beautiful		بكن
truth (f)		قت
government (f)		مت
	413	

to govern

henna (f)

حكومت كرنا
6
خاص
خالى
خاموش
خاندان
Ż
ختم كرنا
فحم موتا
1

12	•		
1	7		
1			
٤		4	(
1			

خالى
خاموش
خاموش خاندان
ż
ختم كرنا
فحتم مونا
خدا حافظ
فداكر (كم)
خُدا نه خواسته
خدا نہ کرے
جد مت
خراب
خرابی
ĊĿŻ
خرچ خرچ کرنا څرچ ہوتا څريدنا
فری ہوتا
ちょう

letter (m)	قط
dangerous	ٹھ ٹھر تاک
dream (m)	خواب
beautiful	خوبصورت
self (reflexive); oneself	تود
happy	نۇش
happiness (f)	نوشى
blood (m)	نون
thought, idea, opinion (m)	خيال

,

grandfather (paternal)	واوا
grandmother (paternal)	دادى
lentils (f)	وال
tooth (m)	وانت
pain (m)	513
door (m)	وروازه
river (m)	وريا
to have diarrhea	دست آنا
signature (m)	وستخط
enemy (m/f)	وستمن
invitation; feast; party (f)	دعوت

to invite x	x کو دعوت دینا x کی دعوت کرنا
to have a party for x	x کی دعوت کرنا
office (m)	د فتر
shop, store (f)	وُكان /دۇكان
shopkeeper/store owner	دُكان والاردُكاندار
heart (m)	<i>ي</i> ل
interest (interesting) (f)	د کچپی
bridegroom (m)	5 ليها
bride (f)	دُلْهِن / دُلْهِنيا
brain, mind, intellect (m)	دٍ مَانَ
day (m)	ڍن
world (f)	ديا
medicine (f)	دوا / دوائی دوپهر
afternoon (f)	K+93
milk (m)	دۇرھ
far	رؤر
time (period of); period (m)	دوران
during this time/period	دوران اِس دوران میں
friend (m/f)	دوست
friendship (f)	
second, another	دوستی دوسرا دونول
both	دوتول

to repeat, double, fold	ڈیر انا د
yogurt (m)	دىتى
sister (f)	ديرى
late, a long while; a long period of time,	23
interval; lateness (f)	
late	دي ہے
to delay, to be a long time, to come late	دير كرنا
to take care of x	د میر سے د میر کرنا x کی د کمیر بھال کرنا
to see	ويكهنا
to give	ويتا
wall (f)	ويوار
mad, ecstatic	ويوانه
sunshine, heat of sun (f)	د څو پ
pomp and gusto (f)	وهؤم وهام
o wash	دهوم دهام دهونا
b	
و	

mail (f)		ڈاک
post office (m)		ڈاک خانہ
doctor (m/f)		ڈاکٹر
to pour, to place, to put		ڈالنا
box (m)		ۇبة
	417	

fear (m)

to fear

ڈھ ۔ ز

ۇر

**ڈرنا** 

Dacca (m)	ڈھاکہ
little, just; please (with 7 form imperatives)	ۇرا

1

night (f)	رات
king (m)	داجہ
road (m)	داست.
pleased; contented; agreed	راضى
to agree upon x	x پر راضی ہونا
to be pleased with x	x سے راضی ہوتا
melody	راگ (m)/ راگن (f)
cheeks, countenance (m)	<i>ڈ</i> خسار
juice, nectar (m)	ניט
receipt (f)	دسيد
relationship / connection (m)	ا شته
family, relatives (m)	لإشته دار
Ramadan, Muslim holy month (m)	ر مضان رواند ہوتا
to depart, to set out	رواند ہوتا

rupée (Indian/ Pakistani currency) (m)	روپيه	
bread (f)	روپيي روڻي	
Russia (m)	<i>ز</i> وس	
Russian	ژوسی	
to stop, to prevent	روكنا	
to cry	رونا	
to stay, to live	ر برنا	
train (f)	ر بنا ریل گاڑی	
	;	
cold (illness) (m)	ذكام	
time, age; world; fortune (m)	زمانتہ	
land (f)	زيين	
landlord (m)	زمينداد	
life (f)	زیین زمیندار زِندگ	
living, alive	زِ تده	
long live	زنده باد	
a lot, very much	ن <u>با</u> ده	
	J	

beloved, sweetheart (m)

whole, entire, all; the whole

ساجن سارا

half (with whole numeral)	ماڑھے
mother-in-law(f)	SC
birthday (f)	سالگرہ
curry (m)	سالن
barrage, luggage, goods (m)	سامان
breath (f)	بيانس
all	شب
vegetable (f)	سبز ی
vegetarian (m/f)	سبزی خور
dream (m)	بينا
to tease, to annoy, to torment	ستانا
true (adj.); truth (m)	E
to speak the truth	يَحَ بولنا
head (m)	1
cold (noun, f)	بردى
cheap	ستا
father-in-law (m)	7
journey (m)	سغر
to make a journey, travel	سقر کرنا
white	سفر کرنا سفیر
to be able to, can	س <i>ک</i> نا
Sikh	سکھ

## to dry

greetings to a Muslim (reply in parentheses)

to explain, to cause to understand

to understand

to cause to listen, to tell, to narrate

orange (m)

beautiful

marble (m)

orange (m)

to listen

hundred

one and a quarter; quarter more (after number)

question (m)

to think

to dry (intransitive)

to sleep

girlfriend (for girls) (f)

from

before

apple (m)

ستكھانا سلام عليكم (وعليكم سلام) السلام عليكم (وعليكم السلام) سمجھانا سُنانا ينتر ا شدد سک مرم شكتر م 12 4 ÷وا ئوال سوچنا وكمنا سوتا سهيلي

4 -

stroll, walk, tour, excursion (f)

to stroll, to take a walk, to tour

hundreds of

service (f)

سیر سیر کرنا سیکڑول ا سینکڑول سیوا

wedding (f)	شادی
poet (m)	شايحر
vegetarian (m/f)	شاکاباری
evening (f)	شام
splendid, stately, grand	شاندار
prince (m)	شابزاده
perhaps	شايد
auspicious name (m) (formal Hindi)	کھھ تام
alcohol, wine (f)	شراب
mischief (f)	شرارت
sherbet (beverage) (m)	شربت
to be shy, reticent	شرمانا
ashamed, bashful, modest	شرمینده شرمینده بونا
to be ashamed, bashful, modest	شرييده بونا
mischievious	17
honorable, noble	شريف

to start, to begin (transitive)	شمر وع کرنا شر وع ہونا شطر نج
to start, to begin (intransitive)	شروع ہونا
chess (f)	شطر نخ
poetry; a couplet, a verse (m)	شعر
thanks (m)	شگر ب
noise, uproar, disturbance (m)	شور
hobby/ hobbies (m)	شوق
husband (m)	شوير
town, city (m)	شير
emperor (m)	شهنشاه

gentleman, sir, mister	صاحب
clean	صاف
morning (f)	Ć
health (f)	صحت
healthy	صحت مند
president (m/f)	صدد
only	<u>م</u> رف
Sufi - a Muslim mystic (m)	صوفى

definitely, sure

necessity; need (f)

necessity, need for x

student (m/f)

temperament, health (f)

manner, style (f)

storm (m)

habituated; accustomed	عادى
to be habituated/used to/accustomed to x	x کا عادی ہونا
lover (m)	عاشق
being a lover (f)	عاشِقى
wonders (pl.)	عجابيب
museum (m)	عجايب كحر
wonder (m)	~\$
wonderful, surprising, strange	تجيب
court (f)	عدالت

2

ضرمور ضرورت x کی ضرورت

طالب عِلم طبيعت طرح طوفان

Arabic (f)		حربي
dear, precious, beloved (m/f)		2.9
love (m)		م <sup>ش</sup> ق
great		عظيم
cure (m)		عِلاج
besides, moreover, in addition to		کے عِلادہ
building (f)		عمارت
age (f)		¢
woman (f)		عوزت
festival Muslim (f)		عيد
Christian		عيساتى
	ż	
	ė	
poor person (m/f)		غريب
poverty (f)		غر 🚽
ghazal (love poem) (f)		غزل
bathroom (m)		غزل غُسل خانہ عُسل کرنا
to bathe		غسل كرنا
slave (m)		
mistake, error (f)		غُلام غلطی
sorrow (m)		ž
sorrowful		عم خمناک
	425	

consideration, deep thought (m)	غور
to consider thoughtfully	غور کرنا
to take x into consideration	x پر غور کرنا

ف

leisure, free time (f)	قرصت
worry (f)	قِكر
skill, art, craft (m)	قَن
artist (m)	فَنكار
army (f)	فوج
to dial the phone	فون ميلانا
to call x on the phone	x کو فون کرنا
decision (m)	فيصله

Ū

capable, able, skillful worthy of (with oblique infinitive) carpet (f) grave, tomb (f) oath (f) to swear by x queue, line (f) قایل کے قایل قالبین قبر مانا قطار

fort (m	1)	قلعه
pen (m	√f)	قكم
shirt (f	)	فميض
qawwa	ali - spiritual-mystical song recited by	توالى
Mus	slim mystics (f)	
prison,	jail (m)	قيدخانه
prisone	er (m/f)	قیدخانہ قیدی
price, c	cost (f)	تيمت
	1	
to bite,	to cut	Ċб
kohl, co	ollyrium (m)	کاننا کاجل
would t	that	کاش
enough	, sufficient, adequate	كافى
black		ЛК
work, je	ob (m)	٢٢
to work		کام کرنا
success	ful	کام کرتا کامیاب کامیابی کان
succ	ess (f)	كاميانى
ear (m)		کان
fork; the		ЕК
when?		ك.٢

since when? sometimes occasionally; now and then clothes (m) book (f) dog (m) how much, how many? trash (m) something, anything nothing fare, rent (m) chair (f) to do ten millions; crore millionaire (m/f) millions of for what reason, why? farmer, peasant (m) tomorrow, yesterday (m) less to reduce to be reduced

کب سے؟ تبھی تبھی تبھی کپڑے کیتاب کتا اکتن کتتا اکتنے اکتنی کچھ نہیں کرامیہ اکری Zet. کروژ پی کروژوں س لي: کسان كل کم کم کرنا کم ہونا

room (m)	کرہ
comb (f)	می م
to comb	متلهی ترنا
slave girl (f)	725
effort (f)	كوشيش
to try	كوشيش كرنا
who?	كون؟
someone; anyone (noun, m.); some, any;	كوتى
approximately (adj).	
no one; nobody	کوئی شہیں
that, which, who (rel. pronoun and conjunction)	کہ
where?	کہاں
from where?	کہاں سے
story (f)	كهاتى
to say, to speak (with -)	كبرتا
to call (something a name) (with عنه)	کہتا
in front of, across, facing	LIL
inside	کے اندر
on top of	کے اوپر
instead of	کے اکی بچائے
in return for x; instead of x	1th LA Ex
regarding	کے بارے میں

out, outside	کے باہر
after	کے بعد
without	(کے) بغیر
near	کے پاس
behind	A L
with	あい と
in front of, across, facing	کے بانے
near	کے قروب
for the sake of, for, in order to	2 2
near	کے نزدیک
under	<u>z</u> 2
kilogram	-ييلو
because of	کی وجہ سے
several; some; a few	حقی
what?	213
what sort of, what kind of, how?	کیا؟ کیسا / کیسی / کیسے؟ کیلا
banana (m)	كيلا
why? for what reason?	کیوں؟
because	کیوں؟ کیونکہ

	5
to eat	كمعانا
food (m)	كمانا
to cough	كمانسنا
cough (f)	كھاڻى
window (f)	کھروکی
athlete, player (m/f)	کھیلاڑی
toy (m)	<i>کھ</i> لونا
to open	كھولتا
to lose (misplace something)	كھونا
agricultural field (m)	کھیت
to play	کھیلنا
	1
_	-
car (f)	گاڑی گاڑی چِلانا
to drive a car	
song (m)	じげ
to sing	5
village (m)	كاول
cow (f)	26
hot	گرم

431

heat, hot weather (f) to fall down request (f) to spend time, to pass filth (f) witness (m/f) meat (m) meat eater (m/f) meat curry (m) round, circular; a circle

song (m)

house (m)

clock/ watch (f)

hour (m)

horse (m)

answerless, speechless; unequalled, matchless

hundred thousand

hundreds of thousands of

گری برنا م گردارش . گزار نا گندگی كواه گوشت گوشت خور گوشت کا سالن گول

هر گھڑی گھنٹا

لا جواب لاكھ لاكھوں

red	لال
to bring	CU
boy (m)	64
girl (f)	لڑکی
to fight x	ビガ - x
yogurt drink (f)	لىتى
to write	لكحنا
tall	كما
people, folk (m)	لوگ
lemon/lime (m)	لوگ لیمول
to take	لينا
ſ	
mother (f)	بال
mother (f)	tl
to hit	い
	E.

to hit	بارتا
to be convinced, to listen, to obey	ยเ
sweets (f)	مِسْحاتَى
helpless	15.
helplessness (f)	جورى
criminal (m)	5
mosquito; insect (m)	p.

love (f)	نحتبت
to love	تحبّت كرنا
lover (m)	تحبوب
hard work (f)	محنت
to do hard work	محنت كرنا
hard working	محنتی
help (f)	بدو
to help x	x کی مدو کرنا
joke, wit; taste (m)	غداق
to tease, to make fun of x	x کا نداق ازانا
pepper (f)	5
chicken (f)	ئر فی
chicken curry (f)	مُر فی کا سالن
to die	ترتا
disposition, health (m)	يران
how are you? (formal)	میزان میزان شریف
grave, tomb, shrine of a Sufi holy man (m)	יצו
to enjoy	مزه کرنا
delicious	مزيدار
traveller (m/f)	شبافر
intoxicating	مست
mosque (f)	شيجد
434	

to smile	شسكرانا
Muslim	شيلم
Muslim	شسلمان
difficult	خفيكل
famous	مشهور
spices (m)	مصالحہ / مسالا
busy	مصرموف
essay, composition (m)	مضمون
purpose, intent; motive (m)	مطلب
forgive/ excuse me	عاف كيجيئ اكرو
examination (medical), investigation (m)	معانكينه
to have something examined (medically)	بتعانتينه كراتا
to know	متعانتینه کراتا معلوم ہونا معلومات
facts, information (f)	معلؤمات
Mughal - dynasty that ruled India from the 16th	ئمتخل
to the 19th century	
poverty (f)	خفيسى
useful/profitable	شفيد
place (m) (plural)	مقام (مقامات)
mausoleum (m)	مُفیدِ مقام (مقامات) مقبرہ مکان مالِک
house (m)	مکان
landlord (m)	مکان مالک
435	

but, however	٦
country (m)	متلک
to meet	ميلتا
possible	شميرن
to celebrate, commemorate	منانا
appropriate	شنابيب
temple (m)	مندر
Tuesday (m)	مَنْكُل
mouth, face (m)	شتح اخند
patient (m)	مريض
fat	موٹا
season (m)	موشم
Mahabharata - Indian epic	میہا بھارت میہار اشٹر ہ
Maharashtra (m)	مهاداشتره
queen, empress (f)	مهاراتی
thanks (f) (lit. kindness)	مهرياتي
please, kindly (with 🖵 T forms)	مہاراش مہارانی مہریانی سے امہریانی سر کے مہمان مہندی
guest (m/f)	مهمان
henna (f)	مہندی
expensive	Bigs
sweet	ميطها
my	ميرا

Mirabai - a 16th century poetess famous for her	براياني
devotional songs to the Hindu deity Krishna	
table (f)	×
minaret (m)	سيتار
I	متي ا
in	<u>میں</u>
4	· ノ
to dance	ناچنا
angry; displeased; upset	ناچتا ناراض ناراض ہونا
to be/ become angry; upset	ناراض ہونا
nose (f)	ناک
name (m)	تاح
grandfather (maternal)	tt
grandmother (maternal)	.it
narcissus (f)	ترجس

near

نزدییک نزدید نِشان ۱ نِشانی نِکلنا نِکلنا نماز flu (m) sign, momento, souvenir (m/f) song (m) to come out, to arise; to depart Muslim ritual prayers (f)

to recite namaz		نمار پڑھنا بنمو
lemon/lime (m)		si
salt (m)		تمک
servant (m)		نوكر
job, work (f)		نوكرى
to bathe		تياتا
no, not		تہیں
blue		LE:
	و	
to return, come back		واپس آنا
to go back, return		واپی آنا واپی جانا
father (m)		والد
mother (f)		والده
parents (m)		والدين
reason (f)		والدين وجہ ور <u>ن</u> ےش کرنا
to work out, to exercise		ورزِش کرنا
otherwise		وربته
weight (m)		وزن
minister (government) (m)		وزير
prime minister (m/f)		وزير وزيراعظم وطن
homeland (m)		وطن
	438	

time (m)	وقت
lawyer, agent (m/f)	ويميل
that, those	0.9
they	œ / ٥٥
he/ she	~ / 09
there	وبإل

	2	
hand (m)	با تھ	
to lose (a battle, contest, game, etc.)	بإرتا	
every	л	
every day	ה גַּט	
every day	ير روز	
every year	بر سال	
every month	بر مبينہ	
every week	ير يغت	
thousand	הלו	
thousands of	بزاروں	
hospital (m)	- سپتال	
Saturday; week (m)	يفته	
plow (m)	تل	
we (polite form: I)	a	
	439	

Hindu	وعدة
India (m)	مِندد ہندوستان ہندوستانی
Indian	<i>م</i> تدوستانی
to cause to laugh	بزيانا
to laugh	بنسنا
air, wind (f)	بتوا
aerial	بتوائى
airport (m)	بتوائى الأا
air pollution (f)	بَتُواتَى الَّذَا بَوَاتَى آلَوْدگى
airplane (m)	بَوالَى جهاز بوشار
intelligent, clever	ہوشیار

or	٢
memory, remembrance (f)	ياد
to remember	یاد کرنا / یاد آنا
for x to remember	یاد کرنا / یاد آنا x کو یاد آنا
that is to say, i.e.	يكعنى
university (f)	يونيور سرش
this, these	2
here	يتيال
Jew	يَبُودى

## English-Urdu Glossary

able	قایل سکنا
to be able to; can (always preceded by stem of another verb)	سكنا
above	أوي
absolutely, completely	بالكل
action (f)	حركت
actor (m)	اداكار
actress (f)	اداكاره
in addition to	کے چلاوہ
additional (more)	اور
address (m)	Ç
aerial	بتوائى
affair (f)	بات
to be affronted	ثرا ماننا
after	کے بعد
afternoon (f)	دويير
again, then	pr.
age (f)	Å
agent (m/f)	وكيل
to agree upon x	وکیل x پرراضی ہوتا کھیت
agricultural field (m)	پ کھیت
"Broading trong (m)	

Α

air (f)	بوا
air pollution (f)	بتوالی آلودگی بتوالی جهاز بتوالی الڈا
irplane (m)	بتواتى جهاز
hirport (m)	يتواتى الدا
live	<u>ز</u> عره
u	سب
ll (whole)	いし
lso, too	بھی اگرچہ / البنڈ امریکی / امریکن
lthough	اگرچہ / البقة
america (m)	امریکہ
merican	امریکی ، امریکن
nd	
gry	اور ناراض
be/ become angry	ناراض جونا
imal (m)	ناراض ہونا چاتور
annoy	
nother	دوسرا
nswer (m)	دوسرا جواب
ny (adj.)	كوتى
nyone/someone	كوتى
nything	E.
pple (m)	سيب
C	443

appropriate; suitable	شنا سِب
approximately	منا سِب تقريبًا <i>ا</i> كوكى
Arabic (f)	عربى
arm, embrace (f)	بانهد
army (f)	فوج
arrangement (m)	ابتظام
art (m)	فن
artist	فتکار (m) /فتکاره (f)
ashamed	شرمینده شرمینده بوتا
to be ashamed	شرجنده بوتا
ask	ي چھنا
athlete/player (m/f)	کھیلاڑی

В

	в	
bad, evil		12
to feel bad, to feel insulted		أرا ماننا
bad (rotten)		فخراب
baggage (m)		سامان
banana (m)		کیلا
Bangladesh (m)		بظله دليش
bashful		شرمتده
to be bashful		شرميده بونا

to bathe	غُسل كرنا / نهانا
beautiful	غُسل کرنا / نہانا سُندر انھوبصورت /حسین
because	کیونکہ
because of	کی وجہ ہے
bed (m)	بانك
before	ہے پہلے
to begin (transitive)	شروع كرنا
to begin (intransitive)	شروع کرنا شروع ہوتا
behind	E L
to believe	じし
beloved, sweetheart (m)	ساجن
besides	کے عِلاوہ
best	بيترين
better	j#.
big	12
birthday (f)	یژا سالگِرہ کائن
to bite; to cut	كالث
black	אנ
blood (m)	بخون
blue	Цž
body (m)	تن
book (f)	تن بِتاب

to be born	بيدا يونا
both	پيدا جونا دونوں
to bother	تنگ کرنا
box (m)	ۇبتە
boy (m)	64
brain (m)	دِماعُ
brave	بهاؤر
bread (f)	روٹی
to break (intransitive)	توش
to break (transitive)	توثرنا
breath (m)	سانس
bride (f)	ولهن ( دُلهنیا
bridegroom (m)	ذ ليها
to bring	បរ
Britain (m)	برطانير
brother (m)	برطانیہ بھائی جمارت/مکان
building (f/m)	
to be built (intransitive)	tž
to build (transitive)	ರರ್ಶ
to cause to be built	بنوانا
to have x built	x کو بنوانا مصرموف
busy	مفروف

but, however	لیکن <i>امگر</i> خربه نا
to buy	خريدنا
by, till	تک
С	
	6.10
cabinet (f)	المارى
capable	قايل
to call (something a name; use with $5$ )	کینا
to call x on the phone	x کو فون کرنا
to call / invite	تيلينا
car (f)	گاڑی
carpet (f)	قاليين
cat (f)	يلتى
to catch, apprehend	<u>پک</u> ڑنا
to celebrate, commemorate	متاتا
celebration (m)	جش
chair (f)	55
to change	يدلنا
cheap	ستا
cheeks; face (m)	ژ خساد
chess (f)	شطرنج
chicken (f)	مُر في
447	

chicken curry (m)	مَر فی کا سالن
child (m)	*
childhood (m)	بحجين
children (f)	أولاد
China (m)	حی <u>ن</u>
Chinese	چی
Christian	عیساتی
city (m)	شہر
clean	صاف
clever	چ <b>ا</b> لاک
to climb	چڑھنا
clock / watch (f)	گھڑی
clothes (m)	کپڑے
clue (m)	Ç
cold (adjective)	تحصندا
cold (noun, f)	یپ تحصنڈا سر دی (f)/جاڑا (m) زکام کنگھی کرتا
cold (weather; winter)	سردی (f)،جاڑا (m)
cold (illness) (m)	ذكام
comb (f)	م تکھی
to comb	محتلهی کرنا
to come	ピブ
to come along, to go along with, to walk	چلتا
448	

to come back	دالپس آنا اُترنا
to come down, to descend	レブ
to come to know, to find out	چانا
to come out, to depart, to set out	إنكلتا
condition (f)	حالت
condition, state (m)	حال
consideration; careful thought (m)	نؤر
to consider thoughtfully	تحور کرنا
to take x into consideration	غور کرنا x پر غور کرنا
to construct	tle
to cause to be constructed	بنوانا
to have x constructed	x کو بنواتا
to be convinced, to obey, to believe	676
cook (m)	باور یک
to cook	ĽĿ
cost (f)	قيمت
cough (f)	کھانی
to cough	كعانسنا
country (m)	متلک
couple, pair (f)	<i>بو</i> ڑى
a couplet (of poetry, m)	شعر
courageous	بهاؤر
	449

court (f)		عدالت
cow (f)		26
craft (m)		فن
crazy, mad, insane		پاکل
criminal (m)		13
crowd (f)		بجير ا
to cry		tes
cunning		<b>ب</b> الاک
cup (f)		بالی
cupboard (f)		المارى
cure (m)		عِلاج
curry (m)		سالن
to cut; to bite		СК
	D	
Dacca (m)		ڈحاکہ
to dance		ئچنا
danger (m)		خطره
dangerous		خطرناک
darkness (m)		اتدجرا
date; history (f)		خطرہ خطرناک اند حیرا تاریخ
daughter (f)		بنى

day (m)	روز / دِن
day before yesterday; day after tomorrow	روز ۱ <u>د</u> ن پرسول
dear, precious, beloved	2.9
death (lit. transfer) (m)	انتقال
to die (for x to die)	x اِنْقَال ہونا
decision (m)	فيصله
deed (f)	حرکت
definitely, sure	خر ور
to delay, to be a long time	ويركرنا
delicious	مزيدار
democracy (f)	عهوريت ا
to depart, to set out	جمؤریت رواند ہونا
to descend	はブイ
details, particulars; explanation; analysis (f)	تفصيل
to dial the phone	قون ميلانا
diarrhea (m)	وسيت
to have diarrhea	دست دست آنا
to die	مر تا
difficult	مشيكل
to discern; to recognize	<u> 국</u> 립 11
disposition, health (m)	بران بران شریف
how are you? (formal)	بران شريف

distress, misery, anxiety (f)	پر يشانی
to do	كرنا
doctor (m/f)	ڈاکٹر
dog (m)	Ğ
door (m)	وروازه
to double; to repeat	<i>ذ</i> يراتا
dream (m)	خواب / سپینا
to drink	بينا
to drive	چلانا
to drive a car	گاڑی چلانا شکھانا سوکھانا
to dry (transitive)	شکھانا
to dry (intransitive)	-وكھانا

Ε

ear (m)	کان
to eat	کھاتا
effort (f)	كوسفيش
to try	كوشېش كرنا
elderly (adj.); elderly person (m)	لاژها
to be embarassed	شرجنده بونا
emperor (m)	شهنشاه
empress (f)	مهاراتی

empty	خالى
to end, conclude (transitive)	ختم كرنا
to end, conclude (intransitive)	ختم بونا
enemy (m/f)	ۇ ئىمن
England (m)	و س انگستان انگریزی را نگستانی انگریز
English (adj.)	انگریزی را نگستانی
English (nationality)	انكريز
English (the language)	انگریزی
to enjoy	مره کرنا
to enlarge, to expand, to cause to spread	بوحانا
(transitive)	
to increase; to grow; to spread (intransitive)	بوهنا
enough!	بى!
enough (sufficient); a lot	كانى
to enter (formal Urdu)	تشريف لانا
entire	تشرييف لانا سارا مضمون
essay / composition (m)	مضمون
evening (f)	شام
every	л
every day (m)	برروز ابر دن
every month (m)	ہرروز اہر دِن ہر مہید ہر ہفتہ
every week (m); every Saturday	ير يغتر

every year (m)		JUR
evil, bad		بر سال ثرا
exactly		تحميك
examination (test) (m)		إمتحان
examination / investigation (medical, m)		خعانيته
to have something examined (medically)		مُعامَيْتِه مُعامَيْنِه كرانا
excrement (m)		یاخانہ بیاخانہ
to exercise		ورزش كرتا
expenditure, expense (m)		ēj
to expend, to spend (transitive)		فرچ کرنا
to be expended, to be spent (intransitive)		to to j
expensive		Er
to explain, to cause to understand		لتنجحانا
to extend (intransitive)		برحنا
to extend, to expand (transitive) (causative)		بوحانا
eye (f)		بوحانا آ نکھ
	F	
face (m)		فمنين المرز
		معلقا م
facts (f)		متحه الممنه معلومات رکر تا پر دار / خاندان
to fall down		
family (m)		גנורן שוניט

famous	مشهور
fan; ventilator (m)	يتكھا
far	ڈور
fare; rent (m)	يمرايي
farmer (m)	يسان
fast, quick	jë.
fat	موٹا
father (m)	والبد / المار يركم الباب / بابا
father-in-law (m)	7
fault, blemish (f)	خرابي
favorite	پيتدپيره
fear (m)	ا الد
to fear	ۇر ئا
feast; party (f)	دعوت
fed up	يترار
festival	تېوارا توبار (m) / عېد (f)
fever (m)	بخار
few	دعوت بیزار تہوارا تیوہار (m) / عید (t) بچار تھوڑا
o fight	لڑتا
to fight x	x سے لڑنا گندگی
ilth (f)	گندگی
o find	tļ

to find out	چ چلتا
fine	المحيك
finger (f)	أ تكلى
to finish	ختم كرنا
to flee	بمعاكرنا
flower (m)	يكحول
flu (m)	نزله (قلو)
to fly	آڑ نا
to cause to fly	آڑانا
food (m)	كمعاتا
fool (m)	أتو
for the sake of, for, in order to	22
to forget	تعقولها
forgive / excuse me	بھولنا معاف کیچیئے /معاف کرد
fork; thorn (m)	کانٹا
fort (m)	قلعہ
freedom (f)	قِلعہ آزادی
free time (f)	فرمت
Friday (m)	ŝ
friend (m/f)	دوست
friendship (f)	دوست دوستی سے
from	E

ž

from where

fruit (m)

fruitseller (m/f)

کہاں سے پھل پھل والا / پھل والی

G

garden (m)

generally

gentleman, sir, mister (m)

germs (m)

to get, to obtain

ghazal (love poem) (f)

ghost (m)

gift (m)

girl (f)

girlfriend (for girls) (f)

to give

give permission to leave (got to run)

to go

to go back

God forbid (May God not will that)

God willing (May God will that)

good

ĖĻ بی اکثر جناب / صاحب جراثیم (كو (with) مِلنا غزل كمفوت. de la لۈكى 5 63 إجازت ويحيي*خ* جانا واپس جانا خدا ندكر (كد) اخدا ند خواست إنشاء الله إخداكر (كم)

goodbye (lit, God be your protector)		خدا حافظ
goods, luggage (m)		سامان
government (f)		خکۇت خکۇمت کرنا
to govern		حکومت کرنا
grand		شانداد
grandfather (maternal)		tt
grandfather (paternal)		وادا
grandmother (maternal)		نانى
grandmother (paternal)		دادى
grave (f)		قبر
grave, tomb, shrine of a Sufi holy man (m)		مزار
great		اعظم اعظيم
greetings, hello, hi		العظم المعليم آداب/آداب عرض/نستے
"Peace on you" [to a Muslim] (reply in		سلام عليكم (وعليكم سلام)
parentheses)		السلام عليكم (وعليكم السلّام) بوار يوى مهمان
grown up, elder person (m/f)		يدار يوى
guest (m/f)		مهمان
	н	
habituated; accustomed		عادى
to be habituated/used to/accustomed to x		عادی x کا عادی ہوتا

hair (m)

## 458

بال

half	ควโ (โตวโ
	آدحا/ آدھ ساڑھے
half (with whole numeral)	
hand (m)	<i>با تھ</i>
happiness (f)	نوش
happy	خوش
hard work (f)	محنت
to work hard	محنت كرنا
hard working	محنتی
hat (f)	ئو پى
he / she	وہ / مح
head (m)	ŕ
health (f)	محت اطبيعت
healthy	صحبت مند
heart (m)	<i>د</i> ل
heat, hot weather (f)	دِل گرى
heavy	يحارى
help (f)	4.د
to help	يدوكرنا
to help x	x کی بدو کرنا
nelpless	ب بس الجنور ب بسی الجنوری جنآ ( میندی
nelplessness (f)	ب یسی الجوری
nenna (f)	جتار میندی

here	یہاں
here (in this direction; hither)	اد هر
hill; mountain (m)	بالر
Hindu	ببتلاو
Hindu devotional hymn (m)	بهجن
hint, clue, trace; address (m)	Ç
his / her (informal)	پتا اس کا راسکا ان کا رانکا
his / her (formal)	أن كار أنكا
history; date (f)	きっち
historical	تاريخي
to hit	بارتا
hobby / hobbies (m)	شوق
holiday, vacation (f)	يحقق
homeland (m)	وطن
horse (m)	<b>گھوڑا</b>
hospital (m)	گھوڑا ہپتال
hot	5
hot (spicy)	jž
hour (m)	<b>گ</b> نتا
house (m)	مكان الكهر
how much / how many?	گھنٹا مکان/گھر کیتنا (کیتنی (کیتنے اِنسان
human being (m)	إنيان

human being, man, person (m)	آدمى
hundreds of	آدمی سیکژول / سینکژول
hundreds of thousands of	لاكھوں
hunger (f)	بحقوك
husband (m)	شو ټر اپټې
	1
I	متیں
if	اگر
if only /would that	کاش
in	یں
in front of, across, facing	کے سامنے ا کے آگے کی اکے پچائے
in return for x	کی اے بچائے
to increase (intransitive)	بر هنا
to increase (transitive)	بڑھاتا
independence (f)	بر هانا آزادی بھارت / میندوستان ہندوستانی معلومات
India (m)	بهارت / بستدوستان
Indian	<b>ہندوستانی</b>
information (f)	معلومات
injury; wound (f)	چوٹ
inside	وہات چوٹ کے اندر

instead of	کارے بچائے
to feel insulted / hurt	ک <i>ارکے</i> بچائے بُرا ماننا
intellect (m)	وماغ
intelligent, clever	ہوشیار
intent; meaning (m)	مطلب
intention (m)	إراده
interest (f)	و کچپی
interesting	<i>د</i> کچسپ
intoxicating	مست
investigation (m)	بمعانتيته
invitation (f) (also party)	وعوت
to invite x	x کو دعوّت دینا
Iran (m)	إ يران
Iranian	ا يرانى
	J
jail (m)	قيدخانه
Japan (m)	جايات
Japanese	جاياتى
Jew	يُهودى
job / work (m)	کام(m)/نوکری (f)
joke (m)	قیدخانه جاپان جاپانی یکودی نکام(m)رنو کری (f)

to tease; to make fun of x	x کا نداق أژانا
journey (m)	سقر
to make a journey	سقر کرنا رس
juice (m)	رى
,	K
king (m)	راجہ
knife (f)	راجہ چھر ی
to know	جانئا
to know (facts)	جاننا پتا ہونا ا <sup>متعلو</sup> م ہونا (xکو) آنا
to know (skills)	tī (Jx)
to know; to recognize	يجإنا
to come to know; to find out	پتا چلنا
kohl, collyrium (m)	كاجل
I	5
land (f)	زميين
landlord (m)	زمیین زمیندار / مکان مالِک میچھلا
last, past, previous, back, latter	میجیھل ا
late (adj); a long time; interval (f)	4,2
late (adv)	د یا ہے
to be late	ور ہوتا در سے آنا
to come late	دي ت

lateness (f)	د یک
to laugh	يتسنا
to cause to laugh	بنيانا
lawyer (m/f)	وتيل
leg (m)	ís.
leisure (f)	فرمت
lemon, lime (m)	يفتو اليكو
lentils (f)	وال
less	F
less	تحوزا
letter (m)	خط
lie (f)	جھوٹ
to lie	فيحقوث بولتا
life	بحفوث بولتا جيخان (m) <i>از</i> ندگی (f)
life, soul, sweetheart, energy (f)	جان
life, lifetime; age (f)	¢
life partner (m/f)	جيون سائقى قطار
line (queue) (f)	قطار
to listen	-ئىتا
to cause or make listen	شناتا
little	تحوزا
to live, to be alive	چينا

to live, to stay	Cr.
living	<i>ڍ</i> نده
long live	زنده باد
a long while, a long period of time; late (f)	23
to lose (misplace something)	کھوتا
to lose (a battle, contest, game)	بإرتا
a lot, very much	<u>زیا</u> ده
love	بِيار (m)/ مُحَبِّت (f)/ عِشْقَ (m)
to love	بِپیار (m)/ تُحَبِّت (f)/ عَبْقُ (m) بِپیار کرنا / تُحَبِّت کرنا
lover	محبوب (m)/ محبوبه (f)
lover (m)	عاشق
being a lover (f)	عاشقى
luggage (m)	سامان
М	
mad, ecstatic	ويوانه
to be made, built, created	63
Mahabharata- a famous Indian epic	مهابھارت
Maharashtra (m)	میها بھارت مہاراشٹرہ ڈاک
mail (f)	ڈاک
to maintain	پان
	1

to make, to build, to create

:::

mango (m)	٢٦
manner (f)	طرح
marble (m)	منگ بربر
market, bazaar (m)	بازار
matter; affair (f)	بات
mausoleum (m)	مقيره
meaning (m)	مطلب
meat (m)	<sup>م</sup> وشت
meat curry (m)	گوشت کا سالن
meat eater (m/f)	گوشت خور
medicine (f)	دوا/ دوائي
to meet	(
melody	راگ (m)ارا گنی (f)
memento, souvenir	نشان (m)/نشانی (f)
memory, remembrance (f)	ياد
to remember x	x کی یاد آنا / x کو یاد کرنا
middle	5
milk (m)	ڈود <i>ھ</i>
millionaire (m/f)	كروژ يې
millions of	دُودھ کروڑ پی کروڑوں
minaret (m)	ميناد
mind (m)	مینار دیاغ

minister (government) (m/f)	وزير
Mirabai - a 16th century poetess famous for her	وزير ميرا يائي
devotional songs to the Hindu deity Krishna	
mischief (f)	ح کت
mischief (f)	حرکت شرارت
mischievious	17
mistake (f)	غلطى
to mock	نداق أژانا
moment (m)	يل
Monday (m)	12
money; cash; wealth; coin (m)	پيپه ۱ پيها
moon (m)	چا تد
moonlight (f)	<i>چاند</i> نی
more	نیادہ
more, additional	اور
moreover	کے بولاوہ
morning (f)	É
mosque (f)	متجد
mosquito (m)	A.
most	اكثر
mother	والبده رامتان ( التي / مان / ماتا ساس
mother-in-law	JL

ma	otive (m)	ب	مُطل
mo	ountain (m)	ال	44
ma	outh (m)	ar	مندا
mo	ovement (f)	ت	57
M	ughal - dynasty that ruled India from the 16th	U	مُغَم
	to the 19th century		
m	useum (m)	ی گھر تسلمان	عجابم
M	aslim	سلمان	سلم ر
M	uslim ritual prayer (f)	ز	12
my	,	L,	r.
		N	

name (m)

noble name (formal Urdu) (m)

auspicious name (formal Hindi) (m)

narcissus; Nargis (f)

to narrate

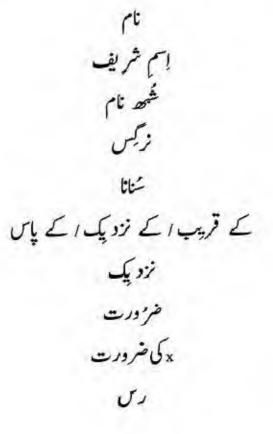
near

near

necessity; need (f)

necessity, need for x

nectar /juice (m)



news (f)		ż
newspaper (m)		اخباد
night (f)		رات
nightingale (f)		<sup>میل</sup> تل
no, not		میکئل ن منہیں ، مہیں
noble, honorable		شريف
nobody		کوئی تہیں
noise (f)		آواز
noise, uproar, disturbance (m)		شور
nose (f)		ناک
nothing		بھ نہیں
now		آب
now and then		مجنعى فيمحصى
	0	
oath (f)		فتم
to obey		56
occasionally		مانتا سبھی سبھی
office (m)		د فتر
offspring (f)		أولاد
often		اكثر
old (thing)		بكرانا
	469	

on		4
on top of		ک أو پ
once		ایک بار
oneself		نۇر
onion (f)		يبياز
only		<u>م</u> رف
to open		كھولنا
or		Ŀ
orange (m)		سنتره (شکتره)
otherwise		ورنه
our (also mine)		מנו
out, outside		باير ا کے باير
owl (m)		ألو
	Р	
pain (m)		,,,,
pair, couple (f)		<i>ج</i> ۇرى
Pakistan (m)		بأكستان
Pakistani		جوڑی پاکِستان پاکِستانی پتلون
		يتلون
pants, trousers (f)		0

papad (crispy appetizers) (m)

parents (m)

پاپڑ والدین

دعوت x کی دعوت کرنا
x کی دعوت کرنا
5115
گردارنا پیمار / مریکض ادا کرنا
ادا کرنا
امن
کِسان
تخلم
لوگ
3.1
يبجياننا
ادا کرنا
شاتيد
إجازت
أتحمانا
اجار
تصوير
تحكوا
مقام
جگہ
ۋالن
11 6
L'AND

to play (an instrument)	بجانا
to play the role of x	x بنتا
please, kindly (with 🖵 T forms)	x بنتا مہریانی سے ر مہریانی کر کے
please, kindly (with forms)	ذرا
pleased, contented; agreed	راضی xسے راضی ہونا
to be pleased with x	xسے راضی ہونا
pleasing (subject marked by ) (adjective)	پند
choice, selection (f) (noun)	
plow (m)	يل
poet (m)	شاعر
poetry (m)	شعر
pomp and gusto (f)	وهوم وهام بیمار م
poor fellow (m)	يتجاره
poor person (m)	غريب
possible	شميكن
post office (m)	ڈاک خانہ
potato (m)	stT
to pour	ۋالنا
poverty (f)	غریبی ا <sup>مقل</sup> سی آنه
praise (f)	تعريف
to praise x	x کی تعریف کرنا

Premchand - prominent author of Urdu-Hindi	بر یم چند
narrative prose, died 1936	
president (m/f)	حدد
to prevent	صدر روکنا
price (f)	تيمت
prime minister (m/f)	وزيراعظم
prince (m)	وزیر اعظم شاہرادہ
principle (m)	أحول
prison (m)	قيدخانه
profitable	مقير
to protect	پالتا
purpose (m)	مطلب
to put	ڈالتا
Q	
qawwali - spiritual-mystical song recited by	قوتالى
Muslim mystics in South Asia (f)	
queen (f)	رانی رمهارانی سوال
question (m)	ستوال
queue (f)	قطار
quick; fast	7
quiet	تیز خاموش

rain (f)	بارش
to rain	بارش جونا
to raise, nourish	پان
Ramadan, Muslim holy month (m)	ر مضان
to reach	يتهنجنا
ready	-تيار
reason (f)	وجہ
receipt (f)	دسيد
to recite namaz (Muslim ritiual prayer)	نماز پڑھنا
to recognize	نماز پڑھنا پېچاننا
red	ער
to reduce	کم کرنا
to be reduced	کم ہونا
regarding	کے بارے میں
relationship / connection (m)	وشته
relatives (family) (m)	يەشتە دار
to remember	یاد کرنا / یاد آنا
to remember x	رِشتہ رِشتہ دار یاد کرنا / یاد آنا xکو یاد کرنا /x کی یاد آنا
to repeat	دُ ہرانا گردارِش
request (f)	<sup>ع</sup> ردارِش

respected elder	يُؤَر گ
rest (m)	بُؤرگ آرام
to rest	آرام کرنا
to return	واپس چانا
in return for x / instead of x	آرام کرنا واپس جانا دکے بدلے میں
revered person	يۇرگ
rice (m, pl.)	چا ول
rice w/ meat or vegetable (f)	يريانى
rich	51
to rise	المپر أٹھنا / جاگنا
river (m)	وريا
road (m)	رستداداسته
room (m)	كمره
round, circular, a circle (m)	گول
to run away from	بھاگنا
rupee (Indian/Pakistani currency) (m)	گول بھاگنا روپیہ ژوس
Russia (m)	ژو ک
Russian	ژوی

salt (m)	تمک
Saturday; week (m)	بفته
to say, to speak	کینا
scanty	تحوثرا
scores of	ييسيون
to scream, yell	بيني: چينا
season (m)	4-34
second, another	دوسرا د
to see	و یکھنا
see you soon (lit. we will meet again)	يتحر ملينك
self(reflexive)	نؤو
to sell	بيجنا
to send	بهيجنا
servant (m)	تو کر
service (f)	خدمت اسيوا
several; some; a few	خِد مت / سیوا کچی
sharp	j <del>z</del>
sherbat (beverage) (m)	شربت
shirt (f)	فميض
shoe (m)	tá

shop, store (f)	دُكان / دۆكان
shopkeeper/store owner	ذكان والا اذكان وار
shut up, be quiet	چې ريو
to be shy, reticent	شرمبنده هونا اشرمانا
sick, ill (adj.), sick person (m/f)	بیار
sickness, illness (f)	بیاری
sign, memento, souvenir	بیاری رنشان (m) / رنشانی (f)
signature (m)	دَستَحُط
Sikh	میکھر میکھ
silent	خاموش
since when	کر ہے
to sing	55
sister (f)	
sister (f)	بہن دِیدِی / بابتی / آیا
to sit	
skill (m)	بیٹھتا کن
skillful	
sky (m)	آبيان
slave (m)	قایل آسان حکلام
slave girl (f)	کنو.
	). L'er
to sleep	سونا ح <u>ا</u> لاک
sly	

چھوٹا
مچھوٹا مستگرانا
برف
5
تحوزا
كوتى
كوتى
the second se
ستبهجي
گیت/ گانا / نغمه
ź
غمناك
آواز
نشان
بات کرنا
بات کرنا خاص
بات
تقرير
تقريركرنا
تقریر کرنا طرزارنا مصالحہ اسالا
مصالحددمسالا
تيز

شاندار
<i>Ş</i> .
يجيلنا
שנו
شروع کرنا شروع ہونا
شروع ہونا
شاندار
تقرير
رينا
چاگنا
じえ
تيهيك
پاخانہ
روكنا
تحقيهر تا
تھہر تا طوفان
كيهاني
يجيب
<i>5</i> .
بير كرنا
طالِب علم ( إستۇۋنت / چھاتر (ہندى)
سیر کرنا طالِبِ عِلم / اِسٹوڈنٹ / چھار (ہندی) پڑھائی
479

to study, read	پڑھنا
stupid (m)	ألو
style (f)	طرح
success (f)	كاميابي
successful	کامیابی کامیاب
Sufi - a Muslim mystic (m)	صوفى
sugar (f)	ي ال
suitable	* تابیب
Sunday (m)	إتوار
sunshine, heat of sun (f)	و څو پ
surprising, strange, wonderful	<u>چ</u> یب
to swear by x	x کی قشم کھانا
sweet (adjective)	ميدهما
sweets (f)	میٹھائی
swift, quick, hot (spicy), sharp	;Z
to swim	تير نا
sycophant (colloquial) (literally, spoon) (m)	<i>3</i> .
Т	
table (f)	je.
to take	لين
to take someone	کینا لے جانا

to take care of x	xک دیکھ بھال کرنا زیکالتا
to take out, remove	تكالئا
tall	كميا
tea (f)	چ <u>ا</u> تے
tears (m)	آگيو
to tease	ستانا رزاق أزانا
tooth (m)	دانت
to tell (to narrate)	شنانا
to tell, say (use with	كهنا
temperament (f)	طبيعت
temple (m)	متدد
test, trial; examination (m)	إمتخان
thanks (lit. kindness) (f)	مهريانى
thanks (m)	لمحکر <i>ب</i> ی
that, those	09
that, which, who (rel. pronoun and conjunction)	کہ
that is to say, i.e.	ليعنى
theft (f)	چورى
their	أن كارأتكا
there	یعن چوری اُن کا / اُنگا وہاں
there (in that direction; thither)	أدهر إس ليح
therefore	اس لیے
481	

	V. J
these days, nowadays	آج کل
they	= 1 03
thief (m)	J. <del>J.</del>
thing (concrete) (f)	iz,
thing, matter (abstract) (f)	بات
to think	سوچنا
thirst (f)	پي <i>ا</i> ل
this, these	2
this much	U I
thorn; fork (m)	55
thought; idea, opinion (m)	خيال
thousands of	بزارول
throne (m)	تخت
to throw	كيهيتكنا
Thursday (f)	<i>تحر</i> ات
till	تک
time (m)	وقت
time, age, world, fortune (m)	زمانته
time (period of); period (m)	دوران
during this time/period	دوران اِس دوران مِیں
tiredness (f)	فتحكن
today (m)	تھکن آن

toilet (m)		پاخاند
tomb (f)		قبر
tomorrow; yesterday (m)		کل
to torment		ستانا
to tour		بيركرنا
town (m)		л <sup>а</sup>
toy (m)		كحطونا
trash (m)		15
to travel		سقر کرنا
traveler (m/f)		خسافر
true (adj.); truth (m)		E
to speak the truth		کیچ بولنا
truth (f)		هيقت
Tuesday (m)		متكل
Turstally (m)		
	U	
umbrella; canopy (f)		چھتری
under		چھتری کے <u>فیچ</u> سمہ بنہ
to understand		108
unemployed		بیکار پونیورٹی تک
university (f)		يونيور شي
until		تک
and the second se		

	2
upset, displeased, unhappy	ناراض ناراض ہونا
to be / become upset, displeased etc.	ناراض ہونا
urine (m)	پيثاب
use, employment (m)	إستعال
to use	إستنعال كرنا
to use x	ایستعال استعال کرنا x کا اِستعال کرنا xکا عادی ہونا
to be used to/ habituated/accustomed to x	xکا عادی ہوتا
useful	خفيد
useless	15.
v	7
vagabond, wanderer (m/f)	آواره
vegetable (f)	ببزى
vegetarian (m/f)	ببزی خور
vegetarian	سبزی خور شاکاباری
verse (of poetry) (m)	شعر
very	يئت
village (m)	كادى
voice (f)	آواز
W	
to wait, to stop; to stay	تقبيرنا
waiting, expecting (m)	هم رنا ا نتظار

	h C uter V
to wait for x	x کا اِنتظار کرنا اُٹھنا / جاگنا
to wake up	أتحصنا / جاكنا
to walk	چلتا
wall (f)	وياداد
to wash	د حلوتا
water (m)	يانى
we	4
wedding (f)	شادی
Wednesday (m)	يدھ
weight (m)	وزن
well, fine, okay	تحييك
to become well	شیک شحیک ہو جانا کرا؟
what?	.5
for what reason, why?	یس لتے؟ کیسا اکیسی اکیے؟
what sort of, what kind of, how?	کیسا اکیسی اکیے ؟
when?	کب۲
when	جې
where?	جمال
where (in which direction)?	کِدهر؟
where	کِدهر؟ جہاں اچدھر بونیا اکونے اکونی
which	Я.
which one?	كونيا اكونيے اكونى

white	سفير
who?	کون؟
whole	سادا
why?	كيول؟
wicked	12
wife (f)	يټې ابيدي
wind (f)	پټنې / چ <u>د</u> ی بئوا
window (f)	کھردکی
wine, alcohol (f)	شراب
wit, joke (m)	يداق
to make fun of, to tease	نداق أزانا
with (instrumental); from	E
with (in the company of)	کے ساتھ
without	(کے) بغیر
witness (m/f)	<i>گو</i> اه
woman (f)	گواہ عورَت محقوبہ
wonder (m)	-3
wonderful	<u>بحيب</u>
wonders (pl. m)	عجائب
word (f)	بات
work (m)	٢٢
to work	کام کام کرنا

to work out (to exercise)	ورزش کرنا
world (f)	دُنيا
worried	پریشان
worry (f)	قکر
worse	يد ژ
worst	بدترين
worthy of (use with oblique infinitive)	بدترین کے قابل
would that/if only	کاش
wound (f)	چوٹ
to write	لكحنا
Y	
year (m)	بال
yellow	يلا جي بان ريان
yes	بى بال 1 بال
yet, still	بيكر بحى
yogurt (m)	دىمى
yogurt drink (lassi) (f)	لتى
you (least formal)	ţ
you (informal)	Å
you (formal)	آپ
young (adj.); youth (m/f)	جوان

youthfulness (f)

your (least formal)

your (informal)

your (formal)

Z

zoo (m)

جوانی تیرا تحمہارا آپ کار آپکا